https://ntrs.nasa.gov/search.jsp?R=19670011192 2020-03-16T18:02:30+00:00Z

BIREFRINGENT DEVICES NAS8-20570

ŗ,

Final Report 8 March 1967

E. O. Ammann J. M. Yarborough

SYLVANIA ELECTRONIC SYSTEMS Government Systems Management for GENERAL TELEPHONE & ELECTRONICS

FACILITY FORM 602 ACCESSION CR 92930 (NASA CR OR TMX OR A'D NUMBER)

0521 N (7 0525 CATEGORY)

3Ì

SYLVANIA ELECTRONIC SYSTEMS - WESTERN OPERATION Post Office Box 205 Mountain View, California 94040

BIREFRINGENT DEVICES

Final Report NAS8-20570

8 March 1967

Authors:

E. O. Ammann J. M. Yarborough

> APPROVED BY: Dr. D. E. Caddes, Manager Quantum Electronic Techniques Department

Prepared for

National Aeronautics and Space Administration Huntsville, Alabama

#### FOREWORD

This is the final report prepared under NASA Contract NAS8-20570, "Birefringent Devices". This report describes work performed on a one-year program whose goal was to advance the state of the art of optical birefringent devices. The work described here was performed in the Quantum Electronic Techniques Department of the Advanced Technology Laboratory of Sylvania Electronic Systems - Western Operation in Mountain View, California, during the period 8 March 1966 through 8 March 1967. The project leader was Dr. E. O. Ammann; another principal contributor was Mr. J. M. Yarborough. The experimental phases of the program received expert technical assistance from Mr. E. J. Sleep.

All work on this contract was under the direction of the Astronautics Laboratory at George C. Marshall Space Flight Center, Huntsville, Alabama. Dr. J. L. Randall was the technical representative for this program, and Messrs. C. Wyman and C. Q. Lee were alternate technical representatives. Their guidance on this program is gratefully acknowledged.

#### ABSTRACT

This report summarizes the results of a one-year program whose goal was to advance the state of the art of optical birefringent devices. Both theory and experiments were performed and are reported.

Theoretical work was performed in several areas. A generalization of the original birefringent network synthesis procedure of Harris, Ammann, and Chang [1] is given which allows the synthesis of networks having asymmetric transmittances. This new procedure increases the versatility of birefringent networks considerably at no expense in network complexity. In addition, a double-pass technique is described which can be used in connection with the new synthesis procedure. This technique reduces by a factor of two the number of network components needed to realize most transmittances. Finally, procedures are given for synthesizing optical amplitude modulators having less distortion than conventional modulators.

Experiments were performed on both single-pass and double-pass naturally birefringent networks. The results of these experiments provide the first direct verification of the single- and double-pass birefringent network synthesis procedures. In addition, distortion measurements were made on oneand three-stage amplitude modulators to verify the calculations mentioned above.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

۰.

Section	<u>Title</u>	Page
I.	INTRODUCTION	1 V
II.	THEORY OF BIREFRINGENT NETWORKS	4
	A. SYNTHESIS OF LOSSLESS NETWORKS CONTAINING EQUAL-LENGTH CRYSTALS AND COMPENSATORS	4
	B. ADDITIONAL TECHNIQUES FOR THE SYNTHESIS OF LOSSLESS DOUBLE-PASS NETWORKS	6
	C. SYNTHESIS OF ELECTRO-OPTIC MODULATORS FOR AMPLITUDE MODULATION OF LIGHT	6
	D. SELECTION OF C( $\omega$ ) BY CHOOSING ITS ZEROS	7
	E. OTHER TOPICS	11
III.	EXPERIMENTAL RESULTS	15
	A. NATURALLY-BIREFRINGENT NETWORKS	15
	1. Physical Considerations	15
	2. Experimental Apparatus	20
	3. Data	28
	4. Discussion of Results	46
	B. ELECTRO-OPTIC NETWORKS: AMPLITUDE MODULATOR	48
	1. Physical Considerations	48
	2. Experimental Apparatus	53
	3. Data	58
	4. Discussion of Results	58
IV.	CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS	64
v.	SUMMARY OF RESEARCH CONTRIBUTIONS ON BIREFRINGENT DEVICES	66
VI.	PUBLICATIONS AND ORAL PRESENTATIONS	68
VII.	REFERENCES	70

# TABLE OF CONTENTS (Continued)

Section	Title	Page
Appendix	A OPTICAL NETWORK SYNTHESIS USING BIREFRINGENT CRYSTALS V. SYNTHESIS OF LOSSLESS NETWORKS CONTAINING EQUAL- LENGTH CRYSTALS AND COMPENSATORS	Б. А-1 /
Appendix	B OPTICAL NETWORK SYNTHESIS USING BIREFRINGENT CRYSTALS VI. ADDITIONAL TECHNIQUES FOR THE SYNTHESIS OF LOSSLESS DOUBLE-PASS NETWORKS	в. в-1 Г
Appendix	C SYNTHESIS OF ELECTRO-OPTIC MODULATORS FOR AMPLITUDE MODULATION OF LIGHT	C-1
Appendix	D A COMPUTER PROGRAM FOR CALCULATING THE FOURIER SERIES COEFFICIENTS - AN ARBITRARY IDEAL FUNCTION	5 D-1
Appendix	E A COMPUTER PROGRAM FOR SYNTHESIS OF LOSSLESS NETWORKS CONTAINING EQUAL-LENGTH CRYSTALS AND COMPENSATORS	6 E-1

.

## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

( -

Figure	Title	Page
2.1	Typical set of zeros for $C(\omega)$	8
2.2	Zeros of $C(\omega)$ for Lyot filter with $n = 15$	10
2.3	Amplitude-transmittance of Lyot filter with $n = 15$	12
2.4	Electro-optic network with non-identical driving voltages	13
3.1	Calcite crystals used as basic unit of birefringent network	17
3.2a	Experimental setup for aligning calcite crystals	21
3.2b	Typical isogyre pattern for calcite	22
3.3	Oven used in birefringent network experiments	23
3.4	Temperature control unit for oven	24
3.5a	Holders in which the calcite crystals are mounted	26
3.5b	End view of calcite crystal holder	27
3.6	Ideal transmittances used for the naturally-birefringent network experiments: (a) triangular wave, (b) rectangular wave, and (c) square wave	29
3 <b>.</b> 7a	Experimental setup used for the single-pass birefringent network experiments	31
3.7b	Schematic of experimental setup used for the single-pass birefringent network experiments	32
3.8	Experimental and calculated results for single-pass birefringent network (triangular wave approximation) with n = 3. The figure shows transmitted optical power vs. network temperature (which is equivalent to transmitted optical power vs. optical frequency).	33
3.9	Experimental and calculated results for single-pass birefringent network (rectangular wave approximation) with n = 3. The figure shows transmitted optical power vs. network temperature (which is equivalent to transmitted optical power vs. optical frequency).	35

## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS (Continued)

•

Figure	Title	Page
3.10	Experimental and calculated results for single-pass birefringent network (square wave approximation) with n = 3. The figure shows transmitted optical power vs. network temperature (which is equivalent to transmitted optical power vs. optical frequency).	36
3.11	Schematic diagram of setup used for double-pass birefringent network experiments	37
3.12	Setup used for double-pass birefringent network experiments	38
3.13	Experimental and calculated results for double-pass birefringent network (triangular wave approximation) with n = 3. The figure shows transmitted optical power vs. network temperature (which is equivalent to transmitted optical power vs. optical frequency).	40
3.14	Experimental and calculated results for double-pass birefringent network (triangular wave approximation) with n = 5. The figure shows transmitted optical power vs. network temperature (which is equivalent to transmitted optical power vs. optical frequency).	41
3.15	Experimental and calculated results for double-pass birefringent network (triangular wave approximation) with n = 7. The figure shows transmitted optical power vs. network temperature (which is equivalent to transmitted optical power vs. optical frequency).	42
3.16	Experimental and calculated results for double-pass birefringent network (rectangular wave approximation) with n = 3. The figure shows transmitted optical power vs. network temperature (which is equivalent to transmitted optical power vs. optical frequency).	43
3.17	Experimental and calculated results for double-pass birefringent network (rectangular wave approximation) with n = 5. The figure shows transmitted optical power vs. network temperature (which is equivalent to transmitted optical power vs. optical frequency).	44
3.18	Experimental and calculated results for double-pass birefringent network (rectangular wave approximation) with $n = 7$ . The figure shows transmitted optical power vs. network temperature (which is equivalent to transmitted optical power vs. optical frequency).	45

## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS (Continued)

· · ·

Figure	Title	Page
3.19	Experimental and calculated results for double-pass birefringent network (square wave approximation) with n = 3. The figure shows transmitted optical power vs. network frequency (which is equivalent to transmitted optical power vs. optical frequency).	47
3.20	KDP crystal used as basic unit of three-stage amplitude modulator.	49
3.21a	Experimental setup for aligning KDP crystals	51
3.21b	Typical isogyre pattern for KDP	52
3.22a	Holder in which KDP crystals are mounted	54
3.22b	End view of KDP crystal holder	55
3.23	Three-stage amplitude modulator	56
3.24	Schematic of 1000 Hz amplifier	57
3.25	Experimental setup used to measure the performance of one- and three-stage amplitude modulators	59
3 <b>.</b> 26a	Measured and calculated amplitude of fundamental vs. V/V for the one- and three-stage modulators of Table II.	60
3.26b	Measured and calculated amplitude of the second harmonic vs. V/V <sub>0</sub> for the one- and three-stage modulators of Table II. The calculated amplitude of the second harmonic for a one-stage modulator is zero.	61
3.26c	Measured and calculated amplitude of the third harmonic vs. V/V <sub>0</sub> for the one- and three-stage modulators of Table II.	62

viii

'n

Q

### I. INTRODUCTION

This report presents the results of a one-year applied research program on  $\sim$  optical birefringent devices. The object of this program was to perform theoretical and experimental studies which would advance the state of the art of birefringent devices.

In this report, we use the term "birefringent devices" to denote optical devices consisting of polarizers and birefringent crystals. The birefringence of the crystals can be either natural or electrically-induced. Networks containing naturally-birefringent crystals will be called naturally-birefringent networks, while networks containing electro-optic crystals will be called electro-optic networks. Much of the previous birefringent network theory, in addition to the theory developed on this program, is applicable to both types of network.

A brief resumé of birefringent networks is perhaps appropriate here to put the contributions of the present program into proper perspective. The first birefringent devices used in optical systems were the Lyot and Solc filters. The Lyot filter was discovered in 1933, while the Solc filter followed some 20 years later. Both these devices are narrow-band filters capable of very narrow passbands. In fact, the major attraction of birefringent devices is their capability of producing bandwidths the order of Angstroms or less.

The Lyot and Solc filters are both particular crystal-polarizer configurations giving particular transmission characteristics. Hence the use of birefringent devices to produce other types of characteristics awaited the development of a synthesis procedure. This important development occurred in 1964 when Harris, Ammann, and Chang found two procedures [1,2] for synthesizing birefringent networks whose transmittance could be arbitrarily  $s_{r'}$ -cified. These procedures opened the possibility of using birefringent networks to realize a variety of devices for optical and laser systems.

Shortly thereafter, Ammann [3,4] found a method for reducing (by a factor of two) the number of network components needed to realize a desired transmittance. The technique involved passage of the light through the birefringent network twice and hence was called a "double-pass" procedure. This discovery was followed closely by the realization [5] that the techniques which had been developed for naturally-birefringent networks could also be applied to electrooptic networks. This opened the way for synthesis of electro-optic shutters, modulators, and so on.

It was with this background that the present program was begun. The object of this program was to further extend the theory of birefringent devices, and in addition, to carry out an experimental program. There were at least three broad goals for the theoretical portion of the work. First, it was desired to find still more general or powerful synthesis techniques in order to increase the versatility and usefulness of birefringent devices. The synthesis procedure of Section II-A and Appendix A is an example of a result which succeeds along these lines. Second, we wished to find modifications of existing procedures or completely new procedures which would result in simplification of the form of the resulting birefringent networks. The goal here, of course, is to obtain the simplest possible practical form for the devices which are obtained. The work of Section II-B and Appendix B is an example of work which has accomplished this goal. Finally, the third goal was to apply the synthesis procedures to particular devices of special The results of Section II-C and Appendix C on the synthesis of importance. amplitude-modulators are typical of this goal.

The experimental portion of the work was expected to yield much valuable information, for although substantial progress had occurred in the past few years in the theory of birefringent devices, experimentation had not kept pace. Hence much work remained to be done in verifying the recently developed theory, and for providing guidance in establishing problem areas for future study. In addition to verifying the theory, the experimental program would also yield some useful devices, of course.

This report is organized in the following manner. Section II gives the theory performed on the program, while Section III reports the experimental

results. The conclusions reached and recommendations for future work are given in Section IV. The research contributions resulting from the work of this program are summarized in Section V, while Section VI lists the journal publications and papers presented at conferences. References are listed in Section VII and several appendices are given at the end of the report.

#### II. THEORY OF BIREFRINGENT NETWORKS

1.5 - 2

In this section, we discuss the theoretical work which was performed during This work has resulted in several significant advances in the the program. theory of optical birefringent networks. The first of these is a generalization of the earlier procedure of Harris, et al. [1] which allows the synthesis of birefringent networks with asymmetric amplitude-transmittances. This has resulted in an entire new class of birefringent networks with very versatile characteristics. The second accomplishment is the discovery of double-pass procedures which are applicable to this new class of network. These two topics are discussed in greater detail in Parts A and B of this Section, and in Appendices A and B. A third accomplishment concerns the synthesis of electro-optic amplitude modulators. Methods were found for synthesizing amplicude modulators having less distortion than present conventional modulators. These are fully described in Part C of this Section and in Appendix C.

In addition to the above problems which were successfully solved, several additional topics were studied with only limited success. These are mentioned in Parts D and E of this section.

## A. SYNTHESIS OF LOSSLESS NETWORKS CONTAINING EQUAL-LENGTH CRYSTALS AND COMPENSATORS

Harris, Ammann, and Chang [1] have given a procedure for synthesizing birefringent networks whose amplitude transmittance could be specified. The work described here is a generalization of that procedure which provides still greater flexibility in the synthesis of birefringent networks. We will not go into the mechanics of the procedure in this section since they are given in Appendix A. Instead we will describe here what can be accomplished with the new procedure.

The procedure of Harris, et al. [1] allows the realization of a birefringent network whose amplitude transmittance  $C(\omega)$  is of the form,

$$C(\omega) = C_0 + C_1 e^{-ia\omega} + C_2 e^{-i2a\omega} + \dots + C_n e^{-ina\omega}$$
 (2.1)

The number of terms employed in  $C(\omega)$  is finite but arbitrary. The choice of the term coefficients (the  $C_1$ ) is also arbitrary as long as each  $C_1$  is <u>real</u>. The form of the network obtained from this synthesis procedure is shown in Figure 1 of Appendix A. The network consists of a series of identical cascaded birefringent crystals between and input and output polarizer. The network may be thought of as composed of several stages, with each stage consisting of one birefringent crystal. A network containing n stages is required for a  $C(\omega)$  having n+1 terms. Once  $C(\omega)$ has been chosen, the rotation angles (the  $\phi_1$ ) of the crystals and the output polarizer can be calculated from the synthesis procedure.

The synthesis procedure of this section allows greater freedom in the choice of  $C(\omega)$  and results in a network whose basic form is shown in Figure 2 of Appendix A. The desired amplitude transmittance  $C(\omega)$  is still written in the form of Equation (2.1), but the  $C_1$  may now be complex. An n-stage network is again required to realize a  $\overline{C(\omega)}$  having n+1 terms, but each stage now consists of an optical compensator and birefringent crystal. The synthesis procedure determines the rotation angle of each crystal, the retardation introduced by each compensator, and the rotation angle of the output polarizer.

The flexibility obtained by dealing with complex  $C_i$  instead of real  $C_i$  may be explained as follows. If one is limited to real  $C_i$ , one is limited to amplitude transmittances whose real part has even symmetry and whose imaginary part has odd symmetry. When complex  $C_i$  can be used, the real and imaginary portions of the transmittance may have any symmetry whatsoever. Finally, it should be mentioned that this technique can be used (as can all the previous techniques) on both naturally-birefringent and electro-optic networks.

A detailed description of the synthesis procedure is given along with an example in Appendix A.

#### B. ADDITIONAL TECHNIQUES FOR THE SYNTHESIS OF LOSSLESS DOUBLE-PASS NETWORKS

69

It was mentioned in the introduction that Ammann has found a procedure [4] which, under certain circumstances, reduced by a factor of two the number of network components necessary to give a certain transmittance. That procedure was applicable to the type of network described in Reference [1], i.e., when the  $C_i$  of Equation (2.1) are real. A logical question arises then as to whether a double-pass procedure can be found for use with the more general synthesis procedure of Section II-A, i.e., when the  $C_i$  of (2.1) are complex. This Section and Appendix B give the successful solution to that question.

Let us briefly review the essence of the double-pass procedure of Reference [4]. For a certain class of amplitude transmittances  $C(\omega)$ , the birefringent network which results from using the synthesis procedure of Reference [1] has a particular symmetry. Because of this symmetry, the last half of the birefringent network can be replaced by a mirror which reflects the light back through the first half of the network. In Appendix B, it is shown that networks obtained using the synthesis procedure of Section II-A can be made to have this symmetry. Having done this, the techniques of Reference [4] can then be used directly.

The details are given in Appendix B which is a copy of the paper accepted for publication in the <u>Journal of the Optical Society of America</u>.

## C. SYNTHESIS OF ELECTRO-OPTIC MODULATORS FOR AMPLITUDE MODULATION OF LIGHT

A technique has been found for synthesizing electro-optic amplitude modulators having arbitrary modulation characteristics. The technique is an adaptation of the procedure of Appendix A for synthesizing naturallybirefringent networks. The desired amplitude-transmission vs. applied voltage function K(v) of the modulator is written as an exponential series containing a finite number of terms. The resulting modulator consists of a series of stages between an input and output polarizer, with each stage consisting of an electro-optic element and optical compensator. The induced birefringence of the electro-optic medium is assumed to be directly proportional to the applied modulating voltage v. The question of how K(v)should be chosen was also investigated. Two cases were considered:

(a) an amplitude modulator to be used with an envelope detector, and (b) an amplitude modulator to be used with a square-law detector. For each case, the ideal K(v) and several methods of approximating it were found. It was found that the manner in which K(v) is chosen is of great importance. Best results were obtained when the term coefficients (the  $C_1$ ) of K(v) were chosen to directly optimize the modulator property (or properties) deemed most important. Modulator designs corresponding to several useful K(v) were tabulated.

l.

The details of this procedure are given in the paper of Appendix C which will be submitted for publication.

### D. SELECTION OF $C(\omega)$ BY CHOOSING ITS ZEROS

In this section, a discussion is given of the relationship between the zeros of  $C(\omega)$  and the behavior of  $C(\omega)$  over one period. This work was undertaken in the hope that it might prove feasible to determine  $C(\omega)$ by choosing its zeros. (The transmittance  $C(\omega)$  is usually chosen now by writing a Fourier series approximation to the ideal function and truncating it.) It appears however that only in certain limited circumstances can an acceptance  $C(\omega)$  be found from selection of its zeros. Nonetheless it is felt that this technique is sufficiently illuminating to merit a short discussion here.

The transmittance  $C(\omega)$  is normally written as in Equation (2.1). We can consider  $C(\omega)$  to be a polynomial in  $e^{-ia\omega}$ , and therefore rewrite (2.1) as

$$C(\omega) = C_n \left[ (C_0/C_n) + (C_1/C_n) e^{-ia\omega} + \dots + e^{-ina\omega} \right]$$
  
=  $C_n (-z_1 + e^{-ia\omega}) (-z_2 + e^{-ia\omega}) \dots (-z_n + e^{-ia\omega})$ 

where the z's are the zeros of the polynomial. These zeros are, in general, complex and can be plotted on the "complex  $e^{-ia\omega}$  plane" as shown in Figure 2.1.



Figure 2.1 Typical set of zeros for  $C(\omega)$ 

Figure 2.1 has the imaginary part of  $e^{-ia\omega}$  plotted along the y axis and the real part of  $e^{-ia\omega}$  plotted along the x axis. Let us now consider what path is traced out on the  $e^{-ia\omega}$  plane when  $\omega$  is changed sufficiently to cover one period of the characteristic.

The quantity  $e^{-ia\omega}$  always has a magnitude of unity and hence must always lie on the unit circle. The phase of  $e^{-ia\omega}$  is linearly proportional to  $\omega$ . Thus as  $\omega$  increases, the quantity  $e^{-ia\omega}$  uniformly traces out the unit circle. If one of the zeros of  $C(\omega)$  lies on the unit circle,  $C(\omega)$  will be zero when the value of  $\omega$  is reached which causes  $e^{-ia\omega}$  to equal that root. If several zeros lie on the unit circle, then  $C(\omega)$  will be zero a corresponding number of times.

Thus the number and spacing of the nulls of  $C(\omega)$  can be controlled by properly choosing its zeros. The difficulty with this procedure is that even though the nulls of  $C(\omega)$  can be precisely controlled,  $C(\omega)$  will often have unacceptable behavior between its nulls. Hence unless the nulls of  $C(\omega)$  are the major properties of interest (as they might be, for example, in the design of a band-stop filter), this technique will probably not prove satisfactory.

As an illustration, let us consider a Lyot filter having n = 15. The amplitude-transmittance of such a filter is given by

$$C(\omega) = \frac{1}{16} (1 + e^{-ia\omega} + e^{-i2a\omega} + e^{-i3a\omega} + e^{-i4a\omega} + e^{-i5a\omega} + e^{-i6a\omega} + e^{-i7a\omega} + e^{-i8a\omega} + e^{-i9a\omega} + e^{-i10a\omega} + e^{-i11a\omega} + e^{-i12a\omega} + e^{-i13a\omega} + e^{-i14a\omega} + e^{-i15a\omega}).$$

The zeros of  $C(\omega)$ , written in polar form, are  $1/22.5^{\circ}$ ,  $1/45^{\circ}$ ,  $1/67.5^{\circ}$ ,  $1/90^{\circ}$ ,  $1/112.5^{\circ}$ ,  $1/135^{\circ}$ ,  $1/157.5^{\circ}$ ,  $1/180^{\circ}$ ,  $1/202.5^{\circ}$ ,  $1/225^{\circ}$ ,  $1/247.5^{\circ}$ ,  $1/270^{\circ}$ ,  $1/292.5^{\circ}$ ,  $1/315^{\circ}$ , and  $1/337.5^{\circ}$ . These zeros are shown in Figure 2.2. We see that all the zeros lie on the unit circle and hence  $C(\omega)$  is forced to zero many times during





each period. In addition, we see that the zeros are uniformly spaced around the unit circle except that one is missing at the point  $2/0^{\circ}$ . This suggests that the filter passband occurs when  $\omega$  has a value which makes  $e^{-ia\omega} = 1$ . This is indeed so as seen from Figure 2.3 which is a plot of the amplitude-transmittance of the Lyot filter.

## E. OTHER TOPICS

During this program, work was performed on two other theoretical problems for which successful solutions were not found. The first of these was the problem of obtaining a procedure which could be used for synthesizing singlesideband modulators. None of the birefringent network synthesis procedures developed to date are appropriate for designing a single-sideband modulator. It can be shown that all electro-optic devices designed from existing procedures will have symmetric output spectra, but a single-sideband modulator by its very definition has an asymmetric output spectrum (e.g., the first upper sideband should be absent). Hence it is necessary to develop a basically different procedure in order to synthesize single-sideband modulators.

An attempt was made to find a procedure which would produce a network of the form shown in Figure 2.4. This network is different from previous network forms in that driving voltages to the various crystals are not identical. The phases of the driving voltages were allowed to be different and were to be calculated from the synthesis procedure. In addition, the rotation angles of the various stages were to be calculated. The network of Figure 2.4 is capable of producing an asymmetric spectrum as required. However, the very thing which distinguishes the network of Figure 2.4 from previous networks also eliminates the possibility of obtaining a synthesis procedure by generalizing or modifying previous results. For the key requirement of existing procedures has been identical birefringent crystals and this is violated by the network of Figure 2.4. The result is that a general synthesis procedure is substantially more difficult to formulate when non-identical birefringent stages compose the network. The complexity of the problem has thwarted attempts thus far to find a synthesis procedure for the general case.





Figure 2.4 Electro-optic network with non-identical driving voltages

It is proposed that one possible alternate approach to obtaining a single-sideband modulator synthesis procedure might be to begin with a more modest problem. For example, instead of allowing the driving voltage of each stage to have a different phase, the phases might be restricted to be either 0° or 90°. Perhaps a synthesis procedure could then be found for this simpler network. This solution to the simplified problem might then give insight into how the general problem should be approached. It appears in any case that the task of devising a synthesis procedure for single-sideband modulators is a very difficult one.

Another general problem area which was studied during the program was that of synthesizing lossless birefringent networks composed of unequal-length crystals. This important problem was approached through the synthesis procedure of Harris, et al. [1] in the following way. The general form of the network resulting from that procedure is shown in Figure 1 of Appendix A. Suppose now that two consecutive crystals are rotated to the same angle. This would be equivalent to a single crystal which is twice as long. Hence the problem under consideration may be restated as, "What must be true about  $C(\omega)$  in order to cause two or more consecutive crystals to be rotated to the same angle?"

Again this quest has resulted in little success. Studies were made to detect possible relationships between the  $C_i$  which would cause several crystals to be rotated to the same angle. Some relations were found among the  $C_i$ , but they were sufficiently complex so as to be of little or no practical value. In addition, relations were sought among the zeros of  $C(\omega)$ , but again unsuccessfully. Thus no set of restrictions has been found which is simple enough to be practical. This problem is an important one, however; its solution would contribute considerably to the practicality of birefringent networks.

## **III. EXPERIMENTAL RESULTS**

In this section, the results of the experimental program are given. The experiments may be conveniently divided into two parts: (a) those performed on naturally-birefringent networks and (b) those performed on electro-optic networks. The experimental program had several goals among which were verification of the various theories, illumination of practical problem areas, and the realization of actual devices.

## A. NATURALLY-BIREFRINGENT NETWORKS

A major goal of these experiments was to verify the synthesis procedures of References [1] and [4]. The optical network involved consists of a series of naturally-birefringent crystals between input and output polarizers (see Figure 1 of Appendix A). Such a network was built and tested in order to compare actual and predicted performance. The details of the construction of the network are discussed below.

## 1. Physical Considerations

## a. Crystal material and sizes

Many materials are suitable for use as the "basic building blocks" of a naturally-birefringent network. One must consider the frequency range of interest and the desired basic periodicity of the network in order to choose an appropriate material. The material must be transparent to the optical frequency band of interest and should be of good optical quality. Having determined the material to be used, the lengths of the crystals can then be chosen to give the periodicity desired for the network's transmittance. A useful graph for determining the periodicity is given in Figure 7 of Reference [1].

For the present experiments, we elected to use an optical wavelength of 6328 Å (from a He-Ne gas laser), and to use calcite crystals with a length of 2 cm. This gives a periodicity of about 100 GHz. Calcite was chosen primarily because of its availability, large birefringence, and good optical quality. The cross section of the crystals was chosen to be 1 cm by 1 cm. Calcite is a negative crystal, and hence the optic axis is the slow axis.

15

The crystals were cut with the optic axis in the planes of the end faces, as shown in Figure 3.1.

## b. Crystal tolerances and compensators

The synthesis of optical birefringent networks requires the use of "identical" crystals. This means that each crystal must have exactly the same retardation. The following calculation points out the difficulty in making identical crystals.

We shall calculate the number of "retardation waves" in a calcite crystal 2 cm long. By retardation waves, we mean the number of optical wavelengths the slow (S) component of an incident impulse of light is retarded compared to the fast (F) component. The indices of refraction of calcite at 6328 Å are approximately  $\eta_0 = 1.654$  and  $\eta_e = 1.485$ . Then the number of optical waves along the F axis is  $L/\lambda_e$  or  $L\eta_e/\lambda_v$ , while the number of optical waves along the S axis is  $L/\lambda_o$  or  $L\eta_o/\lambda_v$ , where  $\lambda_v = 6328$  Å. The difference is then

Retardation = 
$$\frac{L\eta_e}{\lambda_v} - \frac{L\eta_o}{\lambda_v} = \frac{L\eta_e - L\eta_o}{\lambda_v} = \frac{L(\Delta \eta)}{\lambda_v}$$
  
=  $\frac{(2)(.169)}{(6328 \times 10^{-8})} = 5300$  waves.

The problems involved in making crystals with exactly the same number of retardation waves are obvious. Even if all crystals were perfectly homogeneous, the lengths would have to be the same to within, say, 1/360 of a retardation wave. This requires a length tolerance of  $\frac{2}{(360) \times (5300)} = .01$  micron.

The crystals can be made to all have an <u>integral</u> number of waves retardation (although not necessarily the same integer in each case) by adding thin "trimmer" plates (compensators) with just enough birefringence to make the combination of crystal and compensator have an integral number of waves retardation. Thus, for example, one might have crystalcompensator combinations with delays of 5280, 5325, and 5336 waves. The percentage difference in these is small enough that the actual transmittance



Figure 3.1 Calcite crystals used as basic unit of birefringent network

of the network will not differ significantly from the ideal transmittance over the wavelength range of interest. In our experiments, quartz crystals were used for the compensator crystals.

Due to the large number of retardation waves in the calcite crystals, the retardation varies rapidly as a ray moves off-axis. A change of only a few degrees in ray direction is sufficient to significantly deteriorate performance. In order to insure that the light travels down the propagation axis, there must be no refraction at the surfaces, which means that the end faces must be very parallel.

Another problem in preparing the crystals is in properly orienting them. If the optic axis does not lie exactly in the plane of the face, the index of the extraordinary ray is changed. Again, only slight change is necessary to deteriorate performance substantially.

The final problem in preparing the crystals is flatness of the faces. If there is much variation, again the retardation will change significantly.

All of the above considerations apply also to the quartz compensators, although the requirements are not quite so stringent in this case. The only critical item concerning the compensators is parallelism. Again the faces must be very parallel in order to avoid refraction. Other factors are not as critical since the compensators have many fewer retardation waves delay.

For quartz,  $n_0 = 1.542$ ,  $n_e = 1.551$ . Thus, for a 2 mm quartz crystal, Retardation =  $\frac{L(\Delta \eta)}{\lambda} = \frac{(.2)(.009)}{6328 \times 10^{-8}} = 28$  waves.

### c. Temperature effects

All of the above discussion assumes a constant temperature, for birefringence in general varies with temperature. In calcite crystals as long as the ones being used, the retardation thus varies substantially with temperature. Accordingly, all compensators must be matched to their crystal at a particular temperature. Actually, the retardation of the compensators also varies with temperature. However, since the compensators are thin (2 mm) compared to the crystals and made of a much less birefringent material (quartz), they do not vary nearly as rapidly and hence are satisfactory over several waves change in the calcite. The temperature dependence of the networks is discussed in more detail later. 6

In the present experiments, advantage was taken of the temperaturedependent birefringence to sweep the transmittance of the networks through several cycles. This method proved to be quite successful, and at the same time provided valuable data on the temperature behavior of optical networks. To our knowledge, this technique has not been used previously to measure the transmittance of birefringent devices.

## d. Selection of a reference crystal and matching of crystals and compensators

From the above discussion, it is clear that all crystal-compensator combinations must have an integral number of waves delay at some fixed temperature. This temperature is arbitrary, but certain practical considerations set limits on the range into which it must fall. In order to make the temperature-control system as simple as possible, it is desirable to keep the oven above room temperature so that no cooling system is needed. Room temperature is normally 20 to 25°C, so that one would like to pick a reference temperature at least 10°C above this. The most convenient choice is to put a calcite crystal into the oven and note the temperature at which it is an integral number of waves long. Then if all compensators are matched to crystals at this reference temperature (T<sub>ref</sub>), the reference crystal will not need a compensator. Using one crystal (which we shall call crystal #1) as a reference, T<sub>ref</sub> was determined to be 36.264°C. One could, of course, use a higher temperature for the reference temperature since the crystal's transmittance is periodic, but this temperature was deemed adequate for the present experiments. Having established this temperature, compensators were then matched to the remaining crystals (#2, 3, and 4). A one-cm calcite crystal was also cut and matched with a compensator for use in the double-pass experiments. This crystal will be called #5 henceforth.

#### e. Alignment

A very convenient way to aligning the calcite crystals is to use the characteristic isogyre pattern, which may be observed by placing the crystal in diverging or converging light between crossed polarizers. When light propagates at right angles to the optic axis of a uni-axial crystal, as is the case here, the isogyre pattern is a family of hyperbolae as indicated in the sketch of Figure 3.2a. A photograph of the observed pattern of one of the crystals is shown in Figure 3.2b. Each crystal was carefully aligned so that the laser beam hit exactly in the middle of the pattern. After the crystals were thus aligned, they were placed in the oven and compensators were matched to them.

### 2. Experimental Apparatus

### a. Oven

Of central importance to the experiments with naturally birefringent networks are the oven and temperature control unit (to be discussed below). It has already been pointed out that an oven is necessary to select a reference temperature and to match compensators to crystals. Preliminary calculations suggested that a change in temperature of .01°C would change the retardation of a crystal by 1°. After investigating commercially available units, it was decided to build an oven. A photograph of the oven constructed is shown in Figure 3.3. It was made of aluminum with glass end windows to allow passage of the laser beam. A "V" block (shown in Figure 3.5a) was bolted to the bottom to hold the crystal holders (to be described later). The oven was made long enough to hold five crystals, and was made watertight so it could be filled with an index matching oil to reduce reflection losses. The oven was wrapped with a heating coil and insulated on all sides by 2" of styrofoam. The oven was equipped with adjustable feet which could be mounted on an optical bench.

## b. Temperature control unit

As mentioned above, it was decided to build a temperature controller rather than buying one. A schematic of the unit built, as well as the oven, is shown in Figure 3.4. The circuit consists basically of a bridge



Figure 3.2a Experimental setup for aligning calcite crystals

V



Figure 3.2b Typical isogyre pattern for calcite



Figure 3.3 Oven used in birefringent network experiments



Figure 3.4 Temperature control unit for oven

circuit and a differential amplifier. The power device is a power transistor. The unit runs from an un-regulated power supply. This unit turned out to do an extremely good job of controlling temperature in the oven. It has been verified by direct measurement that the unit maintains the oven temperature constant to within .005°C over 24-hour periods.

#### c. Crystal holders

The crystal holders were constructed as shown in Figures 3.5a and 3.5b. The calcite crystals were mounted in rectangular aluminum holders which, in turn, were spring mounted in steel cylinders to allow adjustment of the crystals. The compensators were placed in brass plugs which were inserted in the back of the aluminum crystal holders. The circumference of the steel cylinder was graduated in 1° increments in order to allow precise rotation of the crystals. The steel cylinders were placed in the cylindrical block on the bottom of the oven. With this arrangement, it was thus possible to use the same crystals to synthesize different networks simply by rotating them to new angles.

## d. Thermometer

In order to work within the tight temperature tolerances mentioned above, it is obviously desirable to be able to measure temperatures very accurately. To do this, a Hewlett-Packard Model 2801A quartz thermometer was used. This instrument has two temperature sensors and is capable of reading temperatures to within .0001°C. The digital temperature output was converted to an analog signal by a digital-to-analog converter and used to drive the x axis of an x-y recorder.

### e. Detector

The detector used in these experiments was an ordinary silicon solar cell. Since this device is a square-law detector, the square of the amplitude-transmission characteristic will be detected. The detected signal was applied to the y axis of the x-y recorder.

## f. Experimental setup

The components mentioned above were used to record the transmission curves of the various networks. For each experiment, the crystals were



N


rotated to the prescribed angles, and the oven was heated to about 50°C. The power to the oven was turned off and the oven allowed to slowly cool. The oven cooled at a rate of about 0.001°C/sec. Plots of the optical network's transmittance were obtained by the thermometer driving the x-axis and the silicon solar cell driving the y-axis of an x-y recorder. These traces were taken in the temperature range from about 39°C to 33°C, so that the reference temperature fell about in the middle of the graphs.

#### <u>3. Data</u>

#### a. Single-pass experiments

We now give the experimental results obtained for the single-pass birefringent networks. All single-pass experiments were performed on three-stage networks (n = 3) consisting of three appropriately rotated calcite crystals and an input and output polarizer. In each case, a fourterm  $C(\omega)$  was found (using Fourier techniques) which approximated the ideal characteristic in question. The synthesis procedure of Reference [1] was then used to calculate the rotation angles (the  $\theta_i$ ) for the network stages. The  $\theta_i$  used for the various characteristics are summarized in Table I. Three different ideal transmittances were used in these experiments. They were the triangular wave of Figure 3.6a, the rectangular wave of Figure 3.6b, and the square wave of Figure 3.6c.

A photograph and schematic of the experimental setup used for the singlepass experiments are shown in Figures 3.7a and 3.7b. On each of the following graphs, the recorder trace shows the measured value of  $|C(\omega)|^2$  while the circles show the calculated values of  $|C(\omega)|^2$ .

#### (1) Triangular wave (n = 3)

The first characteristic was a three-crystal approximation to a triangular wave. Crystals #1, #2, and #3 were used. The ideal function in this case is the triangular wave sketched in Figure 3.6a. With three crystals we can achieve a four-term Fourier series approximation to the ideal function. The trace from the x-y recorder is shown in Figure 3.8, with the theoretical points denoted by circles. Agreement with theory is very good. Note that the



(c)

Figure 3.6 Ideal transmittances used for the naturally-birefringent network experiments: (a) triangular wave, (b) rectangular wave, (c) square wave.

## SINGLE-PASS NETWORKS

<u>Ideal</u> Characteristic	n	$\frac{\theta_1}{2}$	<sup>θ</sup> 2	$\frac{\theta_{3}}{2}$	$\frac{\theta}{p}$	
Triangular Wave	3	- 4°35'	-37°45'	-37°45'	85°25'	
Rectangular Wave	3	-17°10'	-33°31'	-33°31'	72°50'	
Square Wave	3	-27°27'	49°23'	49°23'	62°33'	
-daare wate		_, _,		12 43		

-

•

-

-

•

•

# DOUBLE-PASS NETWORKS

<u>Ideal</u> Characteristic	<u>n</u>	$\frac{\theta_1}{2}$	$\frac{\theta_2}{2}$	θ	<u>θ</u> 4	
Triangular Wave	3	- 4°35'	37°45'	-	-	
Rectangular Wave	3	-17°10'	33°31'	-	-	
Square Wave	3	-27°27'	-49°23'	-	-	
Triangular Wave	5	1°28'	- 4°56'	34°34'	-	
Rectangular Wave	5	3°50'	-14°04'	23°04'	-	
Triangular Wave	7	0°43'	- 1°48'	5°00'	-33°28'	
Rectangular Wave	7	3°09'	2°44'	-14°57'	26°26'	

## <u>Table I</u>

Rotation Angles Used in Single-Pass and Double-Pass Birefringent Network Experiments



Figure 3.7a Experimental setup used for the single-pass birefringent network experiments



Schematic of experimental setup used for the single-pass birefringent network experiments Figure 3.7b

,

۰ ،

**~**'

-

D

•

.



detected curve is the square of the approximation curve, since a square-law detector was used. The trace was taken by cooling the oven slowly from approximately 39°C to 33°C (which took about five hours). The small irregularities in the trace, as well as succeeding traces, are due to laser power fluctuations.

#### (2) Rectangular wave (n = 3)

The second characteristic synthesized was a rectangular wave, whose ideal characteristic is shown in Figure 3.6b. The actual experimental trace is shown in Figure 3.9, with the theoretical points again superimposed as circles. Again three crystals were used, and agreement with theory found to be very good.

#### (3) Square wave (n = 3)

The final characteristic chosen to be synce zed is sketched in Figure 3.6c. The experimental curve is shown in Figure 3.10. Again agreement with theory is very good.

#### b. Double-pass experiments

We next give the results of experiments performed on double-pass birefringent networks. Recall that with the double-pass technique [4], the optical signal passes through the birefringent network twice. As a result, a given  $C(\omega)$  can be obtained using only half the number of stages required by the synthesis procedure of Reference [1]. Thus a  $C(\omega)$  with n = 3 can be realized by a 1 1/2-stage birefringent network (one fulllength calcite crystal and one half-length calcite crystal) while n = 5can be realized by a 2 1/2-stage network, and so forth.

Double-pass experiments were performed for n = 3, 5, and 7. The experimental arrangement is shown in the sketch of Figure 3.11 and in the photograph of Figure 3.12. As seen in those figures, a mirror reflects the light back through the birefringent network for the second pass, and a prism deflects the returning beam to the detector.

For these experiments, four-term (n = 3), six-term (n = 5), and eight-term  $(n = 7) C(\omega)$ 's were found using Fourier techniques which approximated



(rectangular wave approximation) with n = 3. The figure shows transmitted optical power vs. network temperature (which is equivalent to transmitted Experimental and calculated results for single-pass birefringent network power vs. optical frequency). optical Figure 3.9





Schematic diagram of setup used for double-pass birefringent network experiments. Figure 3.11



the various ideal functions of Figure 3.6. The synthesis procedure of Reference [1] was then used to calculate the rotation angles (the  $\theta_i$ ) for the stages of the corresponding <u>single-pass</u> networks. These single-pass networks were each symmetric about their midpoint. Hence they could be converted to double-pass networks by replacing the last half of the network by a mirror, and by replacing the input polarizer by a polarizing beam splitter. The rotation angles used for the double-pass network stages are summarized in Table I. The following graphs again show measured and calculated values of  $|C(\omega)|^2$ .

#### (1) Triangular wave (n = 3, 5, and 7)

The double-pass experimental results for the triangular wave characteristic of Figure 3.6a are shown in Figures 3.13, 3.14, and 3.15. These figures show the cases of n = 3, n = 5, and n = 7, respectively. It can be seen that the agreement between theory and experimental results is very good for all cases. It was apparent, however, that greater care must be taken in aligning the crystals as one goes to larger values of n. Even so, no particular difficulty was encountered in obtaining any of the three traces of Figures 3.13, 3.14, and 3.15.

#### (2) Rectangular wave (n = 3, 5, and 7)

Double-pass experimental results for the rectangular wave characteristic of Figure 3.6b are shown in Figures 3.16, 3.17, and 3.18 for the cases of n = 3, 5, and 7, respectively. The agreement between experiment and theory is again seen to be very good for each of the values of n. It is worth noting that adjacent passbands of these characteristics are separated by approximately 1 Angstrom. Thus these birefringent networks are actually band-pass filters having bandwidths of about 1/3 Å and a periodicity of about 1 Å. One might wonder perhaps why the width of the passband does not decrease greatly in going from n = 3 to n = 5 to n = 7. This happens because we are approximating the same ideal function of Figure 3.6b in each of these cases. If we had wished, we could have approximated successively narrower "rectangular functions" as we went to larger values of n , and then the bandwidth could have indeed been reduced. However, our object here was





(triangula: wave approximation) with n = 5. The figure shows transmitted optical power vs. network temperature (which is equivalent to transmitted Experimental and calculated results for double-pass birefringent network optical power vs. optical frequency) Figure 3.14



The figure shows transmitted optical power vs. network temperature (which is equivalent to transmitted Experimental and calculated results for double-pass birefringent network = 7. (triangular wave approximation) with n power vs. optical frequency). optical Figure 3.15

•	• • • •					1-1 - 1 	· · · ·	* * *				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			+ + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + +	, ~ 		· · · ·	Ó
			↓ . 				· · · · ·			- · · · ·			· · · · ·	· · · · · ·	· · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	6
				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		••••		· · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· + · · · ·		+-+ + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + +	  			•	
						111.	· · ·	· · ·		-+ I + + -			•		• •	· · · ·	:	· · · · · · ·	0
	k. Fed	ed	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,									· · · · ·					• • •	•	
· · ·	twor] smit:	mitt	·····					· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · ·		· · · · · · ·						•		b
:	t ne. tran	ransı	, , , ,											:				0-	Ø
	ngen'		 -									. : :		0-			:		
	efri sh	ent						· · ·								·			
	bir.	ival i	•		-							.   .	· ·	·			+		
		eda	,			<u> </u>			-0										
 	ole-1 Tu	- i i si						+	   .			<u>}</u>	-	0-			w -		
	- dout	- J				·		 								•		62	
	f for		·	_									. : 	· · ·					-6
	ults	ratul Parvy	· · ·				····	. 		::.			<u> </u> :						
. <sup>.</sup>	rest Lest	empel	5 5 	 			:. 									· .		·	•
 	ated	rk te 'k te			· · ·		· ·	···:						:	· ·	· 			
	l. lcula	oproz etwoz etic:	,		: 		-   -	· .				· ·	· · ·		. <sup>.</sup> .				
	i ca.	0 1 1 0 0 1 0 0 0							ļ				 					 	- E
	l and	er war er v:			. 					· · · ·	· ·   · ·		   .   .		·				<b>E</b>
:	enta	gu Lan pow	۵ ۵					· ·					· .		· · ·				6
	erime	ctan ical	TCGT				· ·		•••							Le		0	
	Exp.	optie	o bi					· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·						ø					
	.16								-9							,			
	г» — г		: : :	•													·	· ·	
:	Figu:		1				11												
			·		••• • • • .											0		-	
				+			,							╋╋╋┿ ╽╷╷╴ ┥╵┞╷				·	
							· · · · ·	. :		-  <u>-</u> :						Hii			Ĩ
									     . ! !						╉╬╇┿┥				
	╡┼╡╴┊╴ ╡╴ ╡╴																		
111	11111			H	+++++				-ttrr	+1+	1+++		-1		1:	<u></u>	<u>1</u>	<u>1:44</u>	



optical power vs. network temperature (which is equivalent to transmitted (rectangular wave approximation) with n=5. The figure shows transmitted Experimental and calculated results for double-pass birefringent network optical power vs. optical frequency). Figure 3.17



optical power vs. network temperature (which is equivalent to transmitted Experimental and calculated results for double-pass birefringent network (rectangular wave approximation) with n=7. The figure shows transmitted frequency) power vs. optical optical 3.18

Figure

simply to compare experimental results with theory, rather than to obtain the narrowest possible pass-band from a given birefringent network.

#### (3) Square wave (n = 3)

The experimental results for the square-wave characteristic of Figure 3.7c are given in Figure 3.19 for n = 3. For the n = 3 case, theory and experimental results have failed thus far to show good agreement with theory. This is believed to be due to one of two possible causes: (a) Perhaps this particular characteristic is particularly susceptible to crystal misalignment, or (b) the possibility exists that a mistake is present in our calculations of the angles for the stages of the network. We are presently checking both possibilities but, due to time limitations, have not yet succeeded in pinpointing the problem.

#### 4. Discussion of Results

#### a. Single-pass experiments

As has been pointed out earlier, quantitative agreement of the n = 3single-pass experiments with theory is virtually exact. Thus the theory of Reference [1] has been demonstrated to be sufficient for synthesizing arbitrary any stude-transmission characteristics. Three dissimilar characteristics were synthesized with equally good results. While it is true that none of these characteristics required the more complicated synthesis procedure of Appendix A, nevertheless the two types of network are essentially the same in practical form, and hence there is no reason to believe that new difficulties would arise. In addition, the results from the amplitude modulator experiments to be presented later substantiate the generalized synthesis procedure of Appendix A since this procedure was used to calculate the rotation angles and retardations.

#### b. Double-pass experiments

The data presented in the previous section substantiates the theory of double-pass networks of Reference [4]. Again agreement with theory is very good. We believe the development of this new technique and its demonstration to be a significant technical advance, and that double-pass techniques should be used whenever possible. The use of more than two passes becomes an attractive possiblity which we believe should be investigated further, for



the advantages of such a system are obvious. The double-pass experiments for n = 3, 5, and 7 have also demonstrated that greater care in crystal alignment must be used for increasing values of n, as might be expected.

#### B. ELECTRO-OPTIC NETWORKS: AMPLITUDE MODULATOR

We now discuss the results of experiments which were performed on electro-optic networks. The set of experiments carried out had an object of verifying the amplitude-modulator theory of Appendix C. A three-stage amplitude modulator was designed (using that theory) and tested, and the measured distortion compared with the predicted distortion. In addition, a conventional 'one-stage) modulator was tested and its measured and calculated distortion compared. The factors which influenced the design of our amplitude modulator will now be discussed.

#### 1. Physical Considerations

#### a. Crystal material and size

As in the naturally birefringent case, many materials are suitable for use as the basic "building blocks" of these networks. One must consider the optical frequency of interest, the optical quality of the material, the electro-optic coefficients and many others.

In the present experiments, it was decided to use KDP as the electrooptic material. In order to avoid the problem of natural birefringence of KDP, the crystals were oriented so that the light propagated along the optic axis. (An oven would have been required to stabilize the temperature if the light propagated at right angles to the optic axis, for KDP is birefringent in that orientation.) Again the crystals were chosen to be 1 cm by 1 cm in cross section, while the length was chosen to be 4 cm. A sketch of the crystal size and orientation is given in Figure 3.20.

#### b. Crystal tolerances and compensators

The crystal tolerances are less severe in this case than for calcite since the lengths do not have to be kept exactly the same. This is because the half-wave retardation voltage of KDP is independent of length in the orientation being used. The parallelism requirement of the end faces is also less stringent.



Figure 3.20 KDP crystal used as basic unit of three-stage amplitude modulator.

Again it was decided to use quartz compensators. In this case, each compensator was ground and polished to the precise retardation required by the theory.

#### c. Temperature effects

Since light propagates along the optic axis of the KDP crystals, the only effect of a change in temperature is to change the retardation of the compensators. It has been pointed out previously that the retardation of the quartz compensators changes by about 1° per °C. Thus fluctuations of a few degrees Centigrade are not harmful.

#### d. Alignment

The isogyre pattern was again used to align the crystals. In this case, one sees the characteristic "bull's eye" pattern obtained by shining diverging or converging light through a crystal between crossed polarizers. The alignment procedure is indicated schepatically in Figure 3.21a, and a photograph of the observed pattern is given in Figure 3.21b. Each crystal was carefully aligned so the laser beam hit in exactly the middle of the pattern.

#### e. Method of applying modulating vol: age to KDP

Large electric fields are required to modulate KDP when the orientation of Figure 3.20 is used. These large fields may be achieved in either of two ways. The first is to use a resonant cavity of high Q in which the KDP is placed, while the second possibility is to apply a large voltage to a nonresonant circuit. The first method has the advantage of requiring a lower applied voltage, but suffers from at least one serious disadvantage. It would be necessary for each resonant circuit of the modulator to be tuned precisely to the same frequency. If the resonant circuits were not tuned precisely to the same frequency, the voltage applied to the various stages would differ in amplitude and phase thereby causing error in the results. To avoid this problem, we chose to use nonresonant circuits driven by an amplifier capable of producing a large voltage swing. With this arrangement, a voltage of about 7500 volts (zero to peak) was necessary in order to obtain 100% amplitude modulation.







Figure 3.21b Typical isogyre pattern for KDP

#### 2. Experimental Apparatus

#### a. Crystal holders

The KDP crystal holders were constructed as in Figures 3.22a and 3.22b. The KDP crystals were mounted in Rexolite rectangular blocks which were in turn supported in aluminum cylinders by nylon screws. Copper electrodes with holes drilled to allow passage of the laser beam were mounted at each end of the crystal, with one electrode grouned to the cylinder and the other connected to the high voltage. The compensators were placed in brass holders which were slipped in behind the rear electrode.

Early experiments showed that the KDP was strained, causing slight natural birefringence. To cancel this natural birefringence, additional compensators were used with each stage. These compensators were mounted in the same brass holders which contain the compensators required by theory.

#### b. Plexiglass box

A plexiglass box with an aluminum "V" block at the bottom was constructed to hold the crystals. This apparatus is shown in Figure 3.23. A high-voltage bus runs the length of the box, and the crystal electrodes are connected to it.

#### c. High-voltage amplifier

It was found that a high-voltage amplifier with a peak-to-peak voltage swing of 15,000 volts was needed to obtain 100% modulation. Such a device was constructed using a high-voltage beam tetrode tube, with feedback to reduce distortion. A schematic of the amplifier is shown in Figure 3.24. The experiments were all run at a modulating frequency of 1000 Hz. The amplifier was driven by a signal generator.

#### d. Detector

An RCA 931A phototube was used as a detector.



Figure 3.22a Holder in which KDP crystals are mounted



İ



Figure 3.23 Three-stage amplitude modulator



r 7

#### e. Experimental setup

The components described above were set up as shown in Figure 3.25. The crystals were rotated to the angles prescribed by the synthesis procedure of Appendix C, and a wave analyzer was used to measure the amplitude of fundamental and harmonics as a function of the drive voltage.

#### 3. Data

The data obtained from the experiment is shown in Figures 3.26a, 3.26b, and 3.26c, where fundamental, second harmonic, and third harmonic amplitudes are plotted as a function of normalized modulating voltage. Solid curves represent theoretical values, with the experimental points plotted as circles for n = 1 and as squares for n = 3. It will be noted that the fundamental and third harmonic curves fit rather well for both n = 1 and n = 3, while the second harmonic curve is somewhat more irregular. Particularly conspicuous is the notch in the second harmonic curve for the three-crystal case. It was found that this notch could be moved by slightly rotating one of the crystals. Later tests revealed that one of the crystals was modulating to or'y 85% the depth of the other two, and it is felt that making all crystals modulate equally will remove the notch.

Also of note is that the n = 1 modulator, while theoretically producing no second harmonic modulation, actually had more than the threecrystal modulator. The reason for this has not been determined, but its presence makes the three-crystal modulator even more valuable.

#### 4. Discussion of Results

The experimental data presented in the preceding section agree quite well with the theory of Appendix C. As pointed out earlier, one of the three crystals used in the modulator differed from the other two by 15% in electro-optic effect. We are presently modifying the crystal holders in an attempt to equalize the modulation of the three crystals. It will not be possible, however, to give these results in this report. However, the fact that reasonably good results were obtained in spite of this problem is very encouraging, for it appears that such modulators are not overly sensitive to crystal differences.

5<sup>9</sup>

B	-45 <sup>0</sup>	85°20†
b <sub>3</sub> (rad)		و ° 00
θ 3	ł	49 <sup>0</sup> 321
b <sub>2</sub> (rad)	9 8 8 8	4.52
$\frac{\theta}{2}$	ł	49 <sup>0</sup> 321
b <sub>1</sub> (rad)	1.57	2.95
$\frac{\Gamma_{\Theta}}{\Gamma_{\Theta}}$	45°00'	4 <sup>0</sup> 40'
믹	H	e

•

Rotation Angles and Compensator Delays for One- and Three-Stage

# Table II

Amplitude Modulators Used in Experiment

.

.



Experimental setup used to measure the performance of one- and three-stage amplitude modulators. Figure 3.25





ç.

.



Figure 3.26b Measured and calculated amplitude of the second harmonic vs.  $V/V_0$  for the one- and three-stage modulators of Table II. The calculated amplitude of the second harmonic for a one-stage modulator is zero.



Figure 3.26c Measured and calculated amplitude of the third harmonic vs.  $V/V_0$  for the one- and three-stage modulators of Table II.
We feel that this experimental data verifies the theory reasonably well. Thus it indeed appears possible to synthesize improved amplitude modulators using the techniques of Appendix C.

## IV. CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

The goal of this program was to advance the state of the art of optical birefringent devices. Progress in both theory and experimentation was made and has been reported. The advances in theory have resulted in (1) the availability of more general and versatile synthesis techniques; (2) a simplification in the practical form of many birefringent devices; and (3) some detailed analyses of certain particularly important birefringent devices.

Experiments were performed which verify much of the theory and, in addition, demonstrate the practicality of the type of devices under study. These experiments included tests on three-stage single-pass birefringent networks and tests on three-, five-, and seven-stage doublepass networks. The results of these experiments agree very well with predicted results.

Under the conditions of this program, three devices are to be delivered to NASA. These devices will be a single-pass birefringent network having n = 3, a double-pass network (derived from the single-pass network) having n = 7, and a three-stage electro-optic amplitude modulator.

Both the theory and experiments indicate that the birefringent networks have become sufficiently well understood to consider the design and realization of particular devices. The device which would probably be of greatest interest at present is a very narrow-band band-pass filter.

Several unsolved theoretical problems remain which are quite important. First, any techniques which could be found for increasing (or even analyzing) the angular aperture of birefringent networks would be most welcome. Second, double-pass techniques developed on this and previous programs have substantially simplified the practical form of birefringent networks. Any techniques which allow still more passes through the network would give still further simplification. Third, the synthesis of networks composed of

unequal-length crystals is of extreme importance since that would yield networks composed of fewer, but longer crystals. Still other topics come to mind, but these are probably the most significant. Į

# V. SUMMARY OF RESEARCH CONTRIBUTIONS ON BIREFRINGENT DEVICES

The major research achievements of this program on optical birefringent devices are summarized below:

(1) A generalization of the original birefringent network synthesis procedure of Harris, et al. [1] was found which permits the synthesis of networks having asymmetric transmittances. This new procedure substantially increases the versatility of birefringent networks at no expense in network complexity. The new procedure is applicable both to naturally-birefringent networks and electro-optic networks, but will probably be most important in connection with the latter.

(2) A double-pass technique was developed which could be used with the new synthesis procedure mentioned above. The double-pass technique reduces by a factor of two the number of network components needed to realize a given asymmetric transmittance. A double-pass network is approximately one-half the size of the corresponding single-pass network.

(3) Techniques were developed for synthesizing multi-stage amplitude modulators having less distortion than conventional (single-stage) modulators. Two cases were considered: (a) the synthesis of modulators to be used with a linear detector, and (b) the synthesis of modulators to be used with a square-law detector. Designs for 1-, 2-, 3-, 4-, 5-, 6-, 7-, 8-, 9-, and 10-stage modulators were tabulated.

(4) Single-pass and double-pass experiments were performed on naturally-birefringent networks using calcite as the birefringent material. The results of these experiments provide the first experimental confirmation of the synthesis techniques involved. Single-pass experiments were performed on networks with n = 3, while double-pass experiments were performed on networks with n = 3, 5, and 7.

(5) Experiments were performed to verify the calculations on the synthesis of amplitude modulators. Distortion measurements made on oneand three-stage amplitude modulators agreed reasonably well with predicted results.

.

# VI. PUBLICATIONS AND ORAL PRESENTATIONS

Full support from this contract was acknowledged in each of the following publications and oral presentations.

## Journal Publications

- E. O. Ammann and J. M. Yarborough, "Optical Network Synthesis Using Birefringent Crystals. V. Synthesis of Lossless Networks Containing Equal-Length Crystals and Compensators," J. Opt. Soc. Am., vol. 56, pp. 1746-1754, December 1966.
- E. O. Ammann and J. M. Yarborough, "Optical Network Synthesis Using Birefringent Crystals. VI. Additional Techniques for the Synthesis of Lossless Double-Pass Networks," (accepted for publication), <u>J. Opt.</u> <u>Soc. Am</u>.
- 3. E. O. Ammann and J. M. Yarborough, "Synthesis of Electro-Optic Modulators for Amplitude Modulation of Light," (submitted for publication).
- 4. J. M. Yarborough and E. O. Ammann, "Experiments on Single-Pass and Double-Pass Lossless Birefringent Networks," (to be submitted for publication).
- 5. J. M. Yarborough and E. O. Ammann, "Experiments on One- and Three-Stage Electro-Optic Light Modulators," (to be submitted for publication).

# Oral Presentations

- E. O. Ammann and J. M. Yarborough, "Ortical Network Synthesis Using Birefringent Crystals. V. Synthesis of Lossless Networks Containing Equal-Length Crystals and Compensators," presented at the 1966 Fall Meeting of the Optical Society of America.
- E. O. Ammann and J. M. Yarborough, "Synthesis of Electro-Optic Modulators for Amplitude Modulation of Light," (to be submitted for presentation).

۰ . د 3. E. C. Ammann and J. M. Yarborough, "Experiments on Single-Pass and Double-Pass Lossless Birefringent Networks," (to be submitted for presentation at the 1967 Fall Meeting of the Optical Society of America).

## VII. REFERENCES

ò

 S. E. Harris, E. O. Ammann, and I. C. Chang, "Optical Network Synthesis Using Birefringent Crystals. I. Synthesis of Lossless Networks of Equal-Length Crystals," J. Opt. Soc. Am., vol. 54, pp. 1267-1279, October 1964.

ø

- E. O. Ammann and I. C. Chang, "Optical Network Synthesis Using Birefringent Crystals. II. Synthesis of Networks Containing One Crystal, Optical Compensator, and Polarizer per Stage," <u>J. Opt. Soc. Am</u>., vol. 55, pp. 835-841, July 1965.
- E. O. Ammann, "Optical Network Synthesis Using Birefringent Crystals. III. Some General Properties of Lossless Birefringent Networks," <u>J. Opt. Soc. Am.</u>, vol. 56, pp. 943-951, July 1966.
- E. O. Ammann, "Optical Network Synthesis Using Birefringent Crystals. IV. Synthesis of Lossless Double-Pass Networks," <u>J. Opt. Soc. Am</u>., vol. 56, pp. 952-955, July 1966.
- 5. E. O. Ammann, "Synthesis of Electro-Optic Shutters having a Prescribed Transmission vs. Voltage Characteristic," <u>J. Opt. Soc. Am</u>., vol. 56 pp. 1081-1088, August 1966.

Appendix A

N 67-20523

4

OPTICAL NETWORK SYNTHESIS USING BIREFRINGENT CRYSTALS.

V. SYNTHESIS OF LOSSLESS NETWORKS CONTAINING EQUAL-LENGTH CRYSTALS

AND COMPENSATORS

E. O. Ammann and J. M. Yarborough Electronic Defense Laboratories Sylvania Electronic Systems - Western Operation Mountain View, California

published in Journal of the Optical Society of America vol. 50, pages 1746-1754 December 1966

# **Optical Network Synthesis Using Birefringent Crystals. V. Synthesis of Lossless** Networks Containing Equal-Length Crystals and Compensators\*

E. O. Ammann and J. M. Yarborough

Electronic Defense Laboratories, Sylvania Electronic Systems, Mountain View, California 94040

(Received 23 June 1966)

Part I of this series reported a procedure for synthesizing birefringent networks having a prescribed amplitude transmittance. The desired transmittance  $C(\omega)$  was written as  $\overline{C}(\omega) = C_0 + C_1 e^{-i\alpha\omega} + C_2 e^{-i2\alpha\omega} + \cdots + C_n e^{-i\alpha\omega} + C_n e^{-i\alpha\omega} + C_n e^{-i\alpha\omega} + C_n e^{-i\alpha\omega} + \cdots + C_n e^{-i\alpha\omega} + \cdots + C_n e^{-i\alpha\omega} + C_n e^{$  $C_n e^{-in\omega}$ , where the  $C_i$  could be arbitrarily chosen as long as each was real. The synthesis procedure of this paper is a generalization of the procedure of Part I and allows for the realization of  $C(\omega)$  having complex  $C_i$ . The resulting network consists of n stages between an input and output polarizer, with each stage containing a birefringent crystal and (achromatic) optical compensator. The form of this network is essentially the same as the practical form of the network obtained from Part I, and hence the additional versatility is obtained at no extra cost in network complexity.

INDEX HEADINGS: Polarization; Crystals; Filters; Birefringence.

## I. INTRODUCTION

**D**ART I of this series<sup>1</sup> described a procedure for synthesizing birefringent networks whose amplitude transmittance could be specified. The purpose of this paper is to describe a generalization of that procedure which provides still greater flexibility in the synthesis of birefringent networks.

The procedure of Part I allows the realization of a birefringent network whose amplitude transmittance  $C(\omega)$  is of the form,

$$C(\omega) = C_0 + C_1 e^{-ia\omega} + C_2 e^{-i2a\omega} + \dots + C_n e^{-ina\omega}.$$
 (1)

The number of terms employed in  $C(\omega)$  is finite but arbitrary. The choice of the coefficients (the  $C_i$ ) is also arbitrary as long as each  $C_i$  is real. The form of the network obtained from the synthesis procedure of Part 1 is shown in Fig. 1. The network consists of a series of identical cascaded birefringent crystals between an



FIG. 1. Basic configuration of birefringent network (4 stages) obtained from the synthesis procedure of Part I. F and S denote the "fast" and "slow" axes of the birefringent crystals.

input and output polarizer. The network may be thought of a composed of several stages, with each stage consisting of one birefringent crystal. A network containing *n* stages is required for a  $C(\omega)$  having n+1 terms. Once  $C(\omega)$  has been chosen, the rotation angles (the  $\phi_i$ ) of the crystals and the output polarizer can be calculated from the synthesis procedure.

The synthesis procedure of this paper allows greater freedom in the choice of  $C(\omega)$  and results in a network whose basic form is shown in Fig. 2. The desired amplitude transmittance  $C(\omega)$  is still written in the form of Eq. (1), but the  $C_i$  may now be complex. An *n*-stage network is again required to realize a  $C(\omega)$  having n+1terms, but each stage now consists of an optical compensator<sup>2</sup> and a birefringent crystal. The synthesis procedure determines the rotation angle of each crystal, the retardation introduced by each compensator, and the rotation angle of the output polarizer.

The networks of Part I have been termed lossless birefringent networks since there are no energy-dissipating components between the input and output polarizers. The networks of this paper are lossless in the same sense, since no internal polarizers are required.

The following sections contain a description of the synthesis procedure and give an example of its application.

### **II. SYNTHESIS PROCEDURE**

#### A. General

The object of the synthesis procedure is to find the nbirefringent-crystal angles, the retardations of the n+1optical compensators, and the output-polarizer angle which result in the desired amplitude transmittance  $C(\omega)$ . For a given  $C(\omega)$ , 2n+2 network parameters are to be determined. This matches the number of quantities in  $C(\omega)$  which we are free to choose, for we may specify the real and imaginary parts of the n+1 coefficients  $C_i$ . The length L of the crystals (all crystals have the same length) is determined by the periodicity of the desired amplitude transmittance.

<sup>\*</sup> Work supported by the National Aeronautics and Space Administration under Contract NAS8-20570. <sup>1</sup>S. E. Harris, E. O. Ammann, and I. C. Chang, J. Opt. Soc. Am. 54, 1267 (1964).

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> H. G. Jerrard, J. Opt. Soc. Am. 38, 35 (1948).

The notation, conventions, and approaches used here follow closely those used in Part I. Hence for brevity it is assumed that the reader is familiar with that reference, and much of the information contained therein is not repeated here. Because of this, an understanding of Part I is important to the understanding of this paper.

In this paper, optical compensators play an important role. A compensator is used with each crystal of the network and with the output polarizer. Since compensators were not required (in theory) in Part I and hence were not discussed, we briefly describe their operation and analysis. Optical compensators behave essentially the same as very short birefringent crystals. A compensator introduces a phase difference of b radians (where  $0 < b < 2\pi$ ) between slow-axis (S) and fast-axis (F) components. It is assumed that this phase difference is independent of  $\omega$ , an assumption which is approximately valid for most cases of interest. If this assumption is valid, light passing through the compensator polarized in the S direction is operated upon by  $e^{-ib}$ , while light polarized in the F direction is operated upon by unity.

We assume in this paper (as in Part I) that the birefringent crystals and optical compensators of the network are lossless. This means that energy must be conserved at all points within the network between the input and output polarizers. Energy conservation places certain important restrictions on the  $F_i$  and  $S_i$ , and on the  $C_i$  and  $D_i$ . These restrictions are derived and listed in Appendix B.

As in Part I, it is convenient to deal with relative angles  $(\theta_i)$  of the stages instead of absolute angles  $(\phi_i)$ . By relative angle, we mean the additional angle of rotation measured from the preceding stage. The relative angles are given in terms of the  $\phi_i$  of Fig. 2 by

$$\theta_1 = \phi_1,$$
  

$$\theta_2 = \phi_2 - \phi_1,$$
  

$$\vdots$$
  

$$\theta_n = \phi_n - \phi_{n-1},$$
  

$$\theta_p = \phi_p - \phi_n.$$

#### **B.** Procedure

As mentioned in Part I, a useful approach to the synthesis problem is to consider the impulse response of the network. Since the inverse Fourier transform of the amplitude transmittance of a network yields its impulse response, we obtain, by taking the inverse Fourier transform of Eq. (1), the impulse response of the network of Fig. 2:

$$C(t) = C_0 \delta(t) + C_1 \delta(t-a) + C_2 \delta(t-2a) + \cdots + C_n \delta(t-na).$$
(2)

Thus the impulse response of our network consists of a series o<sup>i</sup> equally spaced impulses whose areas are given by the  $C_i$ . Since the  $C_i$  are complex, the impulse response



FIG. 2. Basic configuration of birefringent network (4 stages) obtained from the synthesis procedure of this paper.

is also complex. The explanation of this apparent paradox and its significance is given in Sec. III.

In the synthesis, we begin with the desired  $C(\omega)$  as given by Eq. (1). This is equivalent to prescribing the impulse reponse C(t) of the network. We next proceed from the last component of the network (the output polarizer) back to the first (the input polarizer), calculating the impulse trains which exist at all intermediate points. The areas of the individual impulses of these trains are denoted by the  $F_{i}$  and  $S_{i}$  of Fig. 3, where the  $F_{i}$  impulses are polarized along the fast axis of the preceding (*j*th) crystal and the  $S_{i}$  impulses along the slow axis. In the course of calculating these impulse trains, the crystal angles, compensator delays, and output polarizer angle are determined.

Assume that  $C(\omega)$  and therefore the desired  $C_i$  of Eqs. (1) and (2) have been chosen. We must next find the signal  $D(\omega)$  which is polarized perpendicular to  $C(\omega)$  and therefore is stopped by the output polarizer. Since the network is lossless (between the input and output polarizers), the signal energy entering the first crystal must equal the sum of the energies in the  $C(\omega)$ and  $D(\omega)$  outputs. In equation form, this gives<sup>3</sup>

$$C(\omega)C^*(\omega) + D(\omega)D^*(\omega) = (I_0^0)^2, \qquad (3a)$$

where  $I_{0}^{0}$  is the area of the impulse which is incident upon the first crystal. Rewriting this, we have

$$D(\omega)D^{*}(\omega) = (I_{0}^{0})^{2} - C(\omega)C^{*}(\omega).$$
(3b)



1'10. 3. *n*-stage network. Each stage contains a birefringent crystal and optical compensator.

<sup>3</sup> Asterisks are used in this paper to denote the complex conjugate of a quantity,



FIG. 4. Angle conventions used in the synthesis procedure: (a) final compensator (and output polarizer); (b) *i*th stage; (c) input polarizer.

We are now ready to choose a value for  $I_0^0$ . The left side of (3b) must be nonnegative for all frequencies; thus  $(I_0^0)^2$  must be chosen greater than, or equal to, the maximum value of  $C(\omega)C^*(\omega)$ . Having chosen  $I_0^0$ , we can calculate  $D(\omega)$  from  $D(\omega)D^*(\omega)$  using the method given in Appendix A.

Doing this, we obtain  $D(\omega)$  in the form

$$D(\omega) = D_0' + D_1' e^{-ia\omega} + D_2' e^{-i2a\omega} + \cdots + D_n' e^{-ina\omega},$$

where the  $D_1'$  are in general complex. It is important to note, however, that if  $D(\omega)$  is a solution of Eq. (3b), then  $e^{i\mu}D(\omega)$  is also a solution. Hence a more general solution for  $D(\omega)$  is

$$D(\omega) = e^{i\mu} [D_0' + D_1' e^{-i\alpha\omega} + D_2' e^{-i2\omega} + \cdots + D_n' e^{-in\omega}]$$
  
=  $D_0 + D_1 e^{-i\alpha\omega} + D_2 e^{-i2\omega} + \cdots + D_n e^{-in\omega}.$  (4)

Although the method of Appendix A gives us the values of the  $D_i'$ , it does not determine a value for  $\mu$ . The quantity  $\mu$  must be determined from other considerations and, as is described shortly, has a value which is fixed by the manner in which the synthesis is formulated.

8 -

Let us now relate the inputs (the  $F_i^n$  and  $S_i^n$ ) and outputs (the  $C_i$  and  $D_i$ ) of the final compensator. It should be remembered that the  $F_i^n$  and  $S_i^n$  are components along the fast and slow axes of the preceding (*n*th) stage while the  $C_i$  and  $D_i$  are components along the slow and fast axes of the compensator. With the aid of Fig. 4(a), we find

$$\begin{bmatrix} F_{i^{n}} \\ S_{i^{n}} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \exp(ib_{p}) \cdot \sin\theta_{p} & -\cos\theta_{p} \\ \exp(ib_{p}) \cdot \cos\theta_{p} & \sin\theta_{p} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} C_{i} \\ e^{i\mu}D_{i}' \end{bmatrix}, \quad (5)$$

where  $\theta_p$  is the relative angle of the final compensator (and hence also of the output polarizer), and  $b_p$  is the compensator delay.

We must next determine the quantities  $\mu$ ,  $\theta_p$ , and  $b_p$ . To do this, we derive and solve three simultaneous equations. The first of these equations is obtained by noting that the first impulse to leave the *n*th stage must have a real area. This is equivalent to stating that  $F_{0^n}$ must be real. This condition arises from our convention of Sec. IIA which states that light passing through a compensator polarized in the *S* direction is operated upon by  $e^{-ib}$  while light polarized in the *F* direction is operated upon by unity. Since the first impulse to leave the *n*th stage must have been polarized along the *F* axis of each preceding stage, this impulse will have been operated upon by unity in each compensator and will therefore be real. From Eq. (5) we obtain for  $F_{0^n}$ 

$$F_0^n = \exp(ib_p) \cdot (\sin\theta_p) \cdot C_0 - e^{i\mu} \cdot (\cos\theta_p) \cdot D_0'.$$

Equating the imaginary parts of the left- and right-hand sides of this equation, we obtain the first of our three desired equations,

$$0 = \sin\theta_p [\operatorname{Im}(C_0) \cos b_p + \operatorname{Re}(C_0) \sin b_p] - \cos\theta_p [\operatorname{Im}(D_0') \cos\mu + \operatorname{Re}(D_0') \sin\mu], \quad (6a)$$

where Im and Re denote the imaginary and real parts of the quantity in question. The remaining two equations result because the first and last impulses leaving the nth stage must have been polarized along its fast and slow axes, respectively. This means that

$$F_n^n = S_0^n = 0,$$

which, with (5), gives

and

$$\exp[i(b_p - \mu)] \cdot \tan\theta_p = D_n'/C_n \tag{6b}$$

$$\exp\left[-i(b_p - \mu)\right] \cdot \tan\theta_p = C_0/D_0'. \tag{6c}$$

Taking the complex conjugate of both sides of Eq. (6c), we obtain

$$\exp[i(b_p-\mu)]\cdot\tan\theta_p=-(C_0^*/D_0^{\prime*}).$$

Combining this equation with Eq. (6b), we obtain

$$C_0^*C_n + D_0^{\prime *}D_n^{\prime} = 0,$$
 (7a)

the relation which must be true if Eqs. (6b) and (6c) are to be satisfied simultaneously. Noting that  $D_i' = e^{-i\mu}D_i$ , we can rewrite (7a) as

$$C_0^*C_n + D_0^*D_n = 0.$$
 (7b)

But Eq. (7b) is automatically satisfied from conservation of energy since it is identical to Eq. (B9) of Appendix B.

Since the  $C_i$  and  $D'_i$  are complex, we can rewrite (6b) in the form

$$\exp[i(b_p - \mu)] \cdot \tan\theta_p = |D_n'/C_n| \exp(i\alpha_p), \qquad (8)$$

where in (8) we have expressed  $(D_n'/C_n)$  as a magnitude and phase angle. It is apparent from (8) that the rotation angle  $\theta_p$  of the polarizer and compensator should be chosen to be

$$\tan\theta_p = |D_n'/C_n|. \tag{9}$$

By further manipulations of Eqs. (6a), (6b), and (6c), we obtain

$$\tan b_p = -\operatorname{Im}(C_0)/\operatorname{Re}(C_0) \tag{10}$$

and

$$\mu = b_p - \alpha_p. \tag{11}$$

1749

Having determined  $\alpha_{p}$ ,  $b_{2n}$ , and  $\mu$ , we can substitute these values into (5) to obtain  $F_{i^n}$  and  $S_{i^n}$ , the outputs along the fast and slow axes of the *n*th stage. We must next find the rotation angles and compensator delays of the *n* stages of the network.

To do this, we write expressions relating the input and output of each stage. With the help of Figs. 4(b)and 4(c), we obtain

First Stage

$$\begin{bmatrix} F_0^{I} \\ S_1^{I} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -\sin\theta_1 \\ \exp(-ib_1) \cdot \cos\theta_1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} I_0^{0} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (12a)$$

Second Stage

$$\begin{bmatrix} F_0^2 \\ F_1^2 \\ S_1^2 \\ S_2^2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos\theta_2 & 0 \\ 0 & -\sin\theta_2 \\ \exp(-ib_2) \cdot \sin\theta_2 & 0 \\ 0 & \exp(-ib_2) \cdot \cos\theta_2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} F_0^1, \\ S_1^1 \end{bmatrix}$$
(12b)

and in general,

F F S

S

jth Stage

(13b)

Putting j=n in (12d), we have the input and output relations for the *n*th stage. We know the output (the  $F_i^n$  and  $S_i^n$ ) and wish to find  $\theta_n$ ,  $b_n$ , and the input. As discussed in detail in Part I, an input exists which produces our given output provided that

$$\exp(ib_n) \cdot \tan\theta_n = -F_{n-1}n/S_n = |F_{n-1}n/S_n| \times \exp(i\alpha_n) \quad (13a)$$

 $F_0^{n*}F_{n-1}^n + S_1^{n*}S_n^n = 0.$ 

Note that  $\alpha_n$  includes the effect of the minus sign which precedes  $\mathcal{F}_{n-1}^n/S_n^n$ .

We can satisfy Eq. (13a) by properly choosing  $b_n$ and  $\theta_n$ , while (13b) is automatically satisfied by conservation of energy. Knowing  $b_n$  and  $\theta_n$ , we can then calculate the input to the *n*th stage from (12d). This, of course, is also the output from the n-1 stage; hence we can repeat the procedure just described to determine  $b_{n-1}$  and  $\theta_{n-1}$ . In this fashion, we can work our way back through the entire network until all rotation angles

and

1750

(14b)

and compensator delays have been determined. The general equations for the *j*th stage are

$$\exp(ib_j) \cdot \tan\theta_j = -F_{j-1}{}^j/S_j{}^j = |F_{j-1}{}^j/S_j{}^j| \times \exp(i\alpha_j), \quad (14a)$$

 $F_0{}^{j*}F_{j-1}{}^{j}+S_1{}^{j*}S_j{}^{j}=0,$ 

and

which gives

$$b_j = \alpha_j$$
 (15a)

$$\tan \theta_j = |F_{j-1}^j / S_j^j|.$$
 (15b)

As seen from Appendix B, Eq. (14b) is always automatically satisfied by conservation of energy.

Note that if  $\alpha_{i}=0$ , a compensator is not required (in theory) for that particular stage. Furthermore it is possible to eliminate the compensator from a stage which has  $\alpha_i = \pi$ . This is because when  $\alpha_i = \pi$ , an alternate solution to Eq. (14a) is

h .-- · O

$$b_j = 0, \qquad (15c)$$

$$\tan\theta_j = -\left|F_{j-1}^{j/S_j^{j}}\right|.$$
 (15d)

Hence whenever  $\alpha_j = \pi$ , Eqs. (15c) and (15d), rather than (15a) and (15b), should be used to determine  $b_i$  and  $\theta_i$ .

We now have sufficient information to synthesize a birefringent network. The procedure to be followed is summarized below.

### C. Summary of Synthesis Procedure

(1) Choose the desired amplitude transmittance  $C(\omega)$  and write it in the form of Eq. (1). The  $C_i$  may be complex.

(2) The required length L for all crystals is given by  $L = ac/\Delta \eta$ , where c is the velocity of light in a vacuum and  $\Delta \eta$  is the difference between the extraordinary and ordinary indices of refraction of the crystal. The quantity a is determined by comparing  $C(\omega)$  as written in step (1) to  $C(\omega)$  as given by Eq. (1).

(3) Choose a (real) value for  $I_0^0$ . The choice is arbitrary as long as  $(I_0^0)^2$  is greater than or equal to the maximum magnitude of  $C(\omega)C^*(\omega)$ .

(4) Calculate  $D(\omega)D^*(\omega)$  from Eq. (3b). Use the method of Appendix A to solve for  $D(\omega)$  from  $D(\omega)D^*(\omega)$ . This gives the  $D_i'$  of Eq. (4), but does not determine  $\mu$ . Several different  $D(\omega)$  result, and each of these, when used with  $C(\omega)$  results in an acceptable network. The  $D_i'$  of these  $D(\omega)$  are, in general, complex. The remaining steps should be carried out for each  $D(\omega)$ .

(5) Calculate the rotation angle  $\theta_p$  of the output polarizer and final compensator from Eq. (9), the phase delay  $b_p$  of the final compensator from Eq. (10), and  $\mu$ from Eq. (11).

(6) Calculate the  $F_{i}$  and  $S_{i}$  from Eq. (5).

(7) Using Eq. (15b), calculate the rotation angle  $\theta_n$ of the last stage. The compensator delay  $b_n$  for that stage should be computed from (15a). Using Eqs. (C1) and (C2), calculate the input to the last stage (which is the output from the preceding stage).

(8) Repeat the procedure of step (7) on each succeeding stage until the rotation angle and compensator delay of each stage have been determined. If  $\alpha_j = \pi$  for a particular stage, Eqs. (15c) and (15d) rather than (15a) and (15b) should be used to calculate  $b_i$  and  $\theta_i$ .

#### III. DISCUSSION

We now consider the implications of being able to choose  $C_i$  which are complex. In Part I, we were limited to amplitude transmittances having all  $C_i$  real. This meant that we were limited to  $C(\omega)$ 's whose real parts were even and whose imaginary parts were odd. These restrictions have now been removed; the real and imaginary portions of  $C(\omega)$  can now be asymmetrical.

An objection might be raised that since the  $C_i$  are complex, our network has an impulse response, given by Eq. (2), which is complex; but it is well known that the impulse response of a physical retwork must be real. This dilemma arises because our theory requires the use of achromatic optical compensators in the network. The theory assumes that these compensators introduce a delay which is independent of  $\omega$ . Such a delay is not realizable in practice. Compensators can approximate this behavior over a limited frequency range however. Hence the response of the synthesized network closely approximates  $C(\omega)$  over the frequency range for which the compensators may be considered achromatic. Outside of this frequency range, the transmittance departs from  $C(\omega)$ . Since birefringent networks are ordinarily designed for use over a limited frequency range, this is an acceptable situation.

Thus we see that  $C(\omega)$  accurately describes the network's transmittance over only a limited spectral range. But when we take the inverse Fourier transform of (1) to obtain the impulse response given by (2), we are (incorrectly) assuming that Eq. (1) is valid for all possible values of  $\omega$ . Hence it is not surprising that the result is a complex impulse response for the network. Even though (2) does not accurately give the network impulse response, the time-domain approach is very useful for visualizing and understanding the synthesis procedure.

Part II of this series<sup>4</sup> described a second synthesis procedure which achieved the same goal as the procedure of Part I, but via a different form of birefringent network. Moreover, the procedure of Part II can be used when complex  $C_i$  are present in  $C(\omega)$ . The network which results, however, contains internal polarizers and hence is not a "lossless" network. For that reason, the network of this paper is preferable to that of Part II for most applications.

The network resulting from the synthesis procedure of this paper contains an optical compensator . to

<sup>4</sup>E. O. Ammann and I. C. Chang, J. Opt. Soc. Am. 55, 835 (1965).

the output polarizer. In practice, it is often possible to remove this optical compensator. Suppose for example that we have synthesized a network which has a desired  $C(\omega)$ . If we now remove the final compensator from that network, the new transmittance is  $\exp(ib_p) \cdot C(\omega)$ . Thus the new transmittance differs from the desired transmittance by only a constant phase factor. Often the introduction of this phase factor is of no consequence, and hence the final compensator can be removed. Furthermore, we note from Eq. (10) that if  $C_0$  is chosen to be real,  $b_p=0$  and the need for the final compensator is automatically eliminated.

Finally, we note that (as seen in Figs. 1 and 2) the network of this paper contains a greater number of components than the network of Part I. It should be emphasized, however, that Figs. 1 and 2 show the networks predicted by theory. In practice, the network of Part I requires the use of an optical compensator with each crystal of the network to compensate for slightly incorrect crystal lengths. Thus the practical forms of the networks of this paper and of Part I are identical; the additional flexibility is obtained at no expense in actual network complexity. In this paper, each optical compensator serves the dual functions of (a) introducing the delay required by theory, and (b) compensating for incorrect crystal length.

#### **IV. EXAMPLE**

A sample calculation is performed to illustrate the synthesis procedure of Sec. II. Suppose we wish to approximate the real transfer function  $G(\omega)$  shown in Fig. 5. Since  $G(\omega)$  is neither even nor odd, complex coefficients are required in the approximating exponential series. For this example we use a seven-term complex Fourier series.



FN. 5. Ideal and approximating amplitude transmittances of example. Ideal transmittance is shown by dotted line and approximating transmittance by solid line.

The Fourier-series approximation to the ideal transfer  $G(\omega)$  is given by

$$K(\omega) = (1/\pi^{2}) [(4/9 - i2/9)e^{i3a\omega} - e^{i2a\omega} + (4 + i2)e^{ia\omega} + \pi^{2}/4 + (4 - i2)e^{-ia\omega} - e^{-i2a\omega} + (4/9 + i2/9)e^{-i3a\omega}], (16)$$

which is plotted in Fig. 5. Following the method of Part I, we convert this noncausal approximating function to a causal function by multiplying by  $e^{-i\partial a\omega}$ , which gives

$$C(\omega) = e^{-i3a\omega}K(\omega) = (1/\pi^2) [(4/9 - i2/9) - e^{-ia\omega} + (4 + i2)e^{-i2a\omega} + (\pi^2/4)e^{-i^2\omega} + (4 - i2)e^{-i4a\omega} - e^{-i5a\omega} + (4/9 + i2/9)e^{-i6a\omega}].$$
(17)

Multiplication by  $e^{-i3a\omega}$  is equivalent to introducing a pure time delay in the time domain, and thus the impulse response and transfer function are essentially unchanged. Since the series contains seven terms, the synthesized network contains six stages.

We now calculate  $D(\omega)$ . From Eq. (3b) we have

$$|D(\omega)|^{2} = D(\omega)D^{*}(\omega) = (I_{0}^{0})^{2} - C(\omega)C^{*}(\omega) = (I_{0}^{0})^{2} - 0.44257 - (0.11139 + i0.14695)e^{i\alpha\omega} - (0.11139 - i0.14695)e^{-i\alpha\omega} - (0.09990 + i0.12775)e^{i2\alpha\omega} - (0.09990 - i0.12775)e^{-i2\alpha\omega} - (-0.05961 - i0.05232)e^{i8\alpha\omega} - (-0.05961 + i0.05232)e^{-i3\alpha\omega} - 0.05589e^{i4\alpha\omega} - 0.05589e^{-i4\alpha\omega} - (-0.00913 + i0.00456)e^{i5\alpha\omega} - (-0.00913 - i0.00456)e^{-i5\alpha\omega} - (0.00152 - i0.00203)e^{i6\alpha\omega} - (0.00152 + i0.00203)e^{-i6\alpha\omega}.$$
 (18)

The area  $I_0^0$  of the input impulse must now be chosen in order to obtain  $|D(\omega)|^2$ . It may have any real value as long as  $(I_0^0)^2$  is larger than the maximum value of  $C(\omega)C^*(\omega)$ . The maximum of  $C(\omega)C^*(\omega)$  has been calculated to be 1.035. Thus let us choose  $I_0^0 = 1.050$ , which gives  $(I_0^0)^2 = 1.1025$ . Equation (18) then becomes, after making the substitution  $x = e^{-i\alpha\omega}$ ,

$$|D(\omega)|^{2} = -(0.00152 + i0.00203)x^{6} - (-0.00913 - i0.00456)x^{5} - 0.05589x^{4} - (-0.05961 + i0.05232)x^{3} - (0.09990 - i0.12775)x^{2} - (0.11139 - i0.14695)x - 0.65993 - (0.11139 + i0.14695)x^{-1} - (0.09990 + i0.12775)x^{-2} - (-0.05961 - i0.05232)x^{-3} - 0.05589x^{-4} - (-0.00913 + i0.00456)x^{-5} - (0.00152 - i0.00203)x^{-6}, \quad (19)$$

which is in the form of Eq. (A2). Following the procedure of Appendix A, we find the roots of (19) to be

There are 128  $(2^{n+1})$  possible sets of  $D_i$  which can be obtained from these root. However, sixty-four of these sets are simply negatives of the other sixty-four. We consider only the set that is formed by constructing the polynomial

$$(x-x_1)(x-x_2)(x-x_3)(x-x_4)(x-x_5)(x-x_6).$$

Performing the indicated multiplication, we obtain

 $x^{6} + (-0.63801 - i1.04187)x^{5} + (0.02599 - i0.29300)x^{4} + (0.06553 + i0.44610)x^{3} + (-0.23903 - i0.05436)x^{2} + (0.04871 - i0.00793)x + (-0.00721 + i0.00961).$ (20)

As stated in Eqs. (A9), a set of  $D_i$  is proportional to the coefficients of this polynomial. Evaluating |q| using (A10), we find that |q| = 0.45943,

and so

$$D_0' = -0.00331 + i0.00441$$
,  $D_3' = 0.03011 + i0.20496$ .  $D_5' = -0.29312 - i0.48203$ ,  
 $D_1' = 0.02238 - i0.00364$ ,  $D_4' = 0.01194 - i0.13461$ ,  $D_6' = 0.45943$ .  
 $D_2' = -0.10982 - i0.02495$ ,

From Eqs. (9), (10), and (11) we may now calculate  $\theta_{\rho}$ ,  $b_{p}$ , and  $\mu$ . The results are

$$\theta_p = 83^{\circ} 45', \quad b_p = 0.46365 \text{ rad}, \quad \mu = -5.35589 \text{ rad}.$$

Using Eqs. (A9), we find that

 $\begin{array}{ll} D_0 = e^{i\mu} D_0' = - \ 0.00552 + i0, & D_3 = e^{i\mu} D_3' = - \ 0.14590 + i0.14706, & D_5 = e^{i\mu} D_5' = 0.20976 - i0.52372, \\ D_1 = e^{i\mu} D_1' = 0.01634 + i0.01572, & D_4 = e^{i\mu} D_4' = 0.11485 - i0.07122, & D_6 = e^{i\mu} D_6' = 0.27566 + i0.36755, \\ D_2 = e^{i\mu} D_2' = - \ 0.04593 - i0.10282, & \end{array}$ 

and hence  $D(\omega)$  is completely known. Equation (5) is now used to calculate the  $F_i^6$  and  $S_i^6$ , giving

$\int F_0^{\epsilon}$	]	(0.05065 + i0.00000)	$S_1^6$		$\begin{bmatrix} 0.00637 + i0.01069 \end{bmatrix}$
$F_1^6$		-0.09187 - i0.04675	$S_{2}^{6}$		-0.01604 - i0.06272
$F_2^6$		0.27526+i0.37154	$S_{3}^{6}$		-0.12067+i0.15836
$ F_3^{e} $		0.23817 + i0.09512	' $S_{4^6}$	=	0.16353- <i>i</i> 0.07079
$ F_4 $		0.43791 + i0.00776	$S_5^6$		0.19863- <i>i</i> 0.52554
$\left\{F_{\mathfrak{s}}^{\mathfrak{s}}\right\}$	J	(-0.11293 + i0.01201)	$S_{0}^{6}$		$\begin{bmatrix} 0.27731 + i0.36975 \end{bmatrix}$

As a check, we should note that  $F_{0}^{6}$  must be real and that  $F_{6}^{6}$  and  $S_{0}^{6}$  must be zero. As a further check, we can write that Eq. (14b) is satisfied.

V. We now able to calculate  $\theta_6$  and  $b_6$ , the relative angle of the last stage and the optical compensator delay. Using (15b), we find

and from (15a),

$$\theta_6 = 13^\circ 48'$$

$$b_6 = 5.24997$$
 rad.

The input impulses to the sixth stage are now calculated from Eqs. (C3) and (C4). Equations (15b) and (15a) are then applied again, yielding

and

$$b_5 = 6.11153$$
 rad.

 $\theta_5 = 36^{\circ} 45'$ 

By alternately applying Eqs. (C3) and (C4) and Eqs. (15a) and (15b), we obtain the remaining  $\theta_i$  and  $b_i$ . The

summarized results of the synthesis are

,	$\theta_1$		6° 15′		$b_1$		2.10838	
	$\theta_2$		13° 48′		$b_2$		2.96994	
	$\theta_3$		36° 45′	i	$b_3$		0.74123	
	$\theta_4$	=	43° 00'	,	$b_4$	=	0.74123	radians.
	$\theta_{5}$		36° 45′		$b_5$		2.96994	
	06		13° 48′		$b_{6}$		5.24997	
	$\theta_p$		(83° 45′)		$b_p$		0.46365	

The Jones calculus<sup>5</sup> can be used to verify that these angles and compensator delays give the desired transfer function of Eq. (17).

# ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors are grateful to S. Barnard for assistance in performing the calculations of Sec. IV, and to Professor S. E. Harris for a careful reading of the manuscript.

<sup>5</sup> R. C. Jones, J. Opt. Soc. Am. 31, 488 (1941).

## APPENDIX A

We describe in this appendix a method for calculating  $D(\omega)$  from  $|D(\omega)|^2$ . The method is similar to that given in Appendix A of Part I, but differs in its details. The differences are necessary because (a) we now begin with a  $C(\omega)$  containing complex  $C_i$ , and (b) complex values of  $D_i$  can now be tolerated in  $D(\omega)$ .

We begin with the positive semidefinite polynomial

$$|D(\omega)|^{2} = D(\omega)D^{*}(\omega) = (I_{0}^{0})^{2} - C(\omega)C^{*}(\omega),$$
  
=  $A_{n}e^{in\omega} + A_{n-1}e^{i(n-1)\omega} + \cdots + A_{1}e^{i\omega} + A_{0}$   
+  $A_{1}^{*}e^{-i\omega} + \cdots + A_{n-1}^{*}e^{-i(n-1)\omega}$   
+  $A_{n}^{*}e^{-in\omega}.$  (A1)

Letting  $x=e^{-i\omega}$  and reversing the order of the terms, Eq. (A1) becomes

$$|D(x)|^{2} = A_{n}^{*}x^{n} + A_{n-1}^{*}x^{n-1} + \dots + A_{1}^{*}x + A_{0} + A_{1}x^{-1} + \dots + A_{n-1}x^{-(n-1)} + A_{n}x^{-n}.$$
 (A2)

Assume that  $x_1$  is a root of Eq. (A2). Then

$$A_{n}^{*}x_{1}^{n} + A_{n-1}^{*}x_{1}^{n-1} + \dots + A_{1}^{*}x_{1} + A_{0} + A_{1}x_{1}^{-1} + \dots + A_{n-1}x_{1}^{-(n-1)} + A_{n}x_{1}^{-n} = 0.$$
(A3)

If we now take the complex conjugate of Eq. (A3), we obtain

$$A_{n}(x_{1}^{*})^{n} + A_{n-1}(x_{1}^{*})^{n-1} + \cdots + A_{1}x_{1}^{*} + A_{0}^{*} + A_{1}^{*}(x_{1}^{*})^{-1} + \cdots + A_{n-1}^{*}(x_{1}^{*})^{-(n-1)} + A_{n}^{*}(x_{1}^{*})^{-n} = 0.$$
 (A4)

Equation (A4) can be rewritten as

$$A_{n}(1/x_{1}^{*})^{-n} + A_{n-1}(1/x_{1}^{*})^{-(n-1)} + \cdots + A_{1}(1/x_{1}^{*})^{-1} + A_{0}^{*} + A_{1}^{*}(1/x_{1}^{*}) + \cdots + A_{n-1}^{*}(1/x_{1}^{*})^{n-1} + A_{n}^{*}(1/x_{1}^{*})^{n} = 0.$$
(A5)

But we now see that (A3) and (A5) have identical coefficients, with  $x_1$  being the variable in Eq. (A3) and  $(1/x_1^*)$  the variable in (A5). Thus if  $x_1$  is a root of (A2), then  $(1/x_1^*)$  is also a root. One of these two roots is associated with D(x) and the other with  $D^*(x)$ . Hence we associate half of the roots of Eq. (A2) with D(x) and half with  $D^*(x)$ . D(x) [and hence  $D(\omega)$ ] can then be constructed (to within a multiplicative phase factor) from a knowledge of its roots.

To summarize, begin with  $|D(\omega)|^2$  written in the form of Eq. (A1). The  $A_i$  are in general complex. Form the equation

$$A_{n}^{*}x^{n} + A_{n-1}^{*}x^{n-1} + \dots + A_{1}^{*}x + A_{0} + A_{1}x^{-1} + \dots + A_{n-1}x^{-(n-1)} + A_{n}x^{-n} = 0.$$
(A6)

Solve for the 2n roots of this equation. These roots always exist in pairs of the form

$$\begin{array}{rcl} x_1, & 1/x_1^*, \\ x_2, & 1/x_2^*, \\ x_3, & 1/x_8^*, \\ \vdots & \vdots \\ x_n, & 1/x_n^*. \end{array}$$
 (A7)

Construct all possible equations using one root from each row of (A7). One possible grouping, for example, is

$$(x-x_1)(x-x_2)(x-1/x_3^*)\cdots(x-1/x_n^*) = x^n + d_{n-1}x^{n-1} + \cdots + d_2x^2 + d_1x + d_0.$$
(A8)

Each different grouping of roots results in a different  $D(\omega)$ .

The  $D_i$  are proportional to the  $d_i$ , where q, the constant of proportionality, is in general complex. Writing q in the form  $q = |q|e^{i\mu}$ , we obtain

$$D_{0} = |q| e^{i\mu} d_{0} = e^{i\mu} D_{0}',$$
  

$$D_{1} = |q| e^{i\mu} d_{1} = e^{i\mu} D_{1}',$$
  

$$\vdots$$
  

$$D_{n} = |q| e^{i\mu} d_{n} = e^{i\mu} D_{n}' = |q| e^{i\mu},$$
 (A9)

$$D_i' = |q| d_i$$

The necessity of allowing q to be complex can be seen by noting that if  $D(\omega)$  is a solution of Eq. (3b), then  $e^{i\mu}D(\omega)$  is also a solution.

The quantity |q| is calculated from

where

$$|q|^{2}[d_{0}d_{0}^{*}+d_{1}d_{1}^{*}+\cdots+d_{n-1}d_{n-1}^{*}+1]=A_{0}.$$
 (A10)

In order to calculate the phase angle  $\mu$ , however, "dditional information must be provided. The necessary information is obtained from the restriction that  $F_0^n$ must be real, a condition which results from our formulation of the synthesis procedure. With this restriction,  $\mu$  is uniquely determined (see Sec. IIb) and  $D(\omega)$  can be obtained.

Thus the method of this appendix allows us to find  $D(\omega)$  to within a multiplicative phase factor  $e^{i\mu}$ . We obtain values for the  $D_{i}'$ , where

$$D(\omega) = e^{i\mu} [D_0' + D_1' e^{-ia\omega} + D_2' e^{-i2\omega} + \cdots + D_{n-1}' e^{-i(n-1)a\omega} + D_n' e^{-ina\omega}],$$
  
=  $D_0 + D_1 e^{-ia\omega} + D_2 e^{-i2\omega} + \cdots + D_{n-1} e^{-i(n-1)a\omega} + D_n e^{-ina\omega}.$  (A11)

#### APPENDIX B

In this appendix, the restrictions placed upon the  $F_i$  and  $S_i$  (and upon the  $C_i$  and  $D_i$ ) because of conservation of energy are derived. Consider the *i*th stage of the network of Fig. 2. Since the network is lossless, the energy in the fast-axis output plus the energy in the slow-axis output of the *i*th stage must equal the energy incident upon the first stage. Stated mathematically, this gives

$$F^{i}(\omega)F^{i*}(\omega) + S^{i}(\omega)S^{i*}(\omega) = (I_{0}^{0})^{2}.$$
 (B1)

If we write out Eq. (B1) and equate the coefficients of corresponding terms, we obtain the equations

$$F_{0}^{i*}F_{0}^{i}+F_{1}^{i*}F_{1}^{i}+\cdots+F_{i-1}^{i*}F_{i-1}^{i}+S_{1}^{i*}S_{1}^{i}$$
  
+S\_{2}^{i\*}S\_{2}^{i}+\cdots+S\_{i}^{i\*}S\_{i}^{i}=(I\_{0}^{0})^{2}, (B2)

$$F_{0}^{i*}F_{i}^{i} + F_{1}^{i*}F_{2}^{i} + \dots + F_{i-2}^{i*}F_{i-1}^{i} + S_{1}^{i*}S_{2}^{i} + S_{2}^{i*}S_{3}^{i} + \dots + S_{i-1}^{i*}S_{i}^{i} = 0, \quad (B3)$$

$$F_{0}^{i*}F_{2}^{i}+F_{1}^{i*}F_{3}^{i}+\cdots+F_{i-3}^{i*}F_{i-1}^{i}+S_{1}^{i*}S_{3}^{i}$$
$$+S_{2}^{i*}S_{4}^{i}+\cdots+S_{i-2}^{i}S_{i}^{i}=0, \quad (B4)$$
$$\vdots$$

$$F_0^{i*}F_{i-1}^{i} + S_1^{i*}S_i^{i} = 0.$$
 (B5)

 $C(\omega)$  and  $D(\omega)$  must also satisfy conservation of energy, giving the following restrictions on the  $C_i$  and  $D_i$ .

$$C_{0}^{*}C_{0}+C_{1}^{*}C_{1}+\cdots+C_{n}^{*}C_{n}+D_{0}^{*}D_{0}+D_{1}^{*}D_{1}+\cdots$$

$$+D_{n}^{*}D_{n}=(I_{0}^{0})^{2}, \quad (B6)$$

$$C_{0}^{*}C_{1}+C_{1}^{*}C_{2}+\cdots+C_{n-1}^{*}C_{n}+D_{0}^{*}D_{1}+D_{1}^{*}D_{2}+\cdots$$

$$+D_{n-1}^{*}D_{n}=0, \quad (B7)$$

$$C_0^*C_2 + C_1^*C_3 + \dots + C_{n-2}^*C_n + D_0^*D_2 + D_1^*D_3 + \dots + D_{n-2}^*D_n = 0,$$
 (B8)

 $C_0^*C_n + D_0^*D_n = 0.$  (B9)

# APPENDIX C

This appendix gives a systematic and rapid method of calculating the input to a stage, once the output is known. This is simply a formalized procedure of solving for the  $F^{j-1}$  and  $S^{j-1}$  of (12d) once the  $F^{j}$  and  $S^{j}$  are We begin by defining  $F_{j-1}^{j}$  and  $S_{j}^{j}$  in polar form:

$$F_{j-1}{}^{j} = |F_{j-1}{}^{j}| \exp(if_{j-1}{}^{j}) \tag{C1}$$

$$S_j^{\ j} = |S_j^{\ j}| \exp(is_j^{\ j}). \tag{C2}$$

Using these definitions, we find the expressions for the  $F^{j-1}$  and  $S^{j-1}$  in matrix form

$$\begin{pmatrix} F_{0}^{j-1} \\ F_{1}^{j-1} \\ \vdots \\ F_{j-1}^{j-1} \end{pmatrix} = \frac{\exp(-is_{j}^{j})}{\{|F_{j-1}^{j}|^{2} + |S_{j}^{j}|^{2}\}^{\frac{1}{2}}} \begin{pmatrix} F_{0}^{j} & S_{1}^{j} \\ F_{1}^{j} & S_{2}^{j} \\ \vdots & \vdots \\ F_{j-1}^{j} & S_{j}^{j} \end{pmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} S_{j}^{j} \\ -F_{j-1}^{j} \end{bmatrix}.$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} S_{0}^{j-1} \\ S_{1}^{j-1} \\ \vdots \\ S_{j-1}^{j-1} \end{pmatrix} = \frac{\exp(ib_{j}) \cdot \exp(is_{j}^{j})}{\{|F_{j-1}^{j}|^{2} + |S_{j}^{j}|^{2}\}^{\frac{1}{2}}} \begin{pmatrix} F_{0}^{j} & S_{1}^{j} \\ F_{1}^{j} & S_{2}^{j} \\ \vdots & \vdots \\ F_{j-1}^{j} & S_{j}^{j} \end{pmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} F_{j-1}^{j*} \\ S_{j}^{j*} \end{bmatrix}.$$

$$(C3)$$

As before, the calculated values  $F_{j-1}^{j-1}$  and  $S_0^{j-1}$  should always be zero.

Appendix B

N 67-20524

OPTICAL NETWORK SYNTHESIS USING BIREFRINGENT CRYSTALS.

VI. ADDITIONAL TECHNIQUES FOR THE SYNTHESIS OF LOSSLESS DOUBLE-PASS NETWORKS

E. O. Ammann and J. M. Yarborough Electronic Defense Laboratories Sylvania Electronic Systems - Western Operation Mountain View, California

to be published in Journal of the Optical Society of America

# I. INTRODUCTION

In Part IV of this series<sup>1</sup>, it was shown that a certain class of amplitude transmittances can be realized by birefringent networks containing only half as many crystals as normally required. The technique involved was called a double-pass synthesis procedure since the light makes two passes through the network. The purpose of this paper is to give additional double-pass procedures which are applicable, when the number of network stages is odd, to a still broader class of amplitude transmittances.

We will make use of results obtained in several previous papers of this series. Although some of this material is reviewed, familiarity with these papers is desirable. It is particularly important that the reader be acquainted with the techniques and results of Part  $IV^1$ , and to a lesser degree, with the contents of Parts  $I^2$  and  $V^3$ .

The double-pass procedures described in Part IV are applicable to the type of birefringent network described in Part I. The first part of this paper gives additional circumstances in which a double-pass procedure can be used with that type of network. The second part of this paper deals with double-pass procedures for the more general type of birefringent network of Part V.

Let us briefly review the essence of the double-pass procedures of Part IV. For a certain class of amplitude transmittances  $C(\omega)$ , the birefringent network which results from using the synthesis procedure of Part I has a particular symmetry. Because of this symmetry, the last half of the birefringent network can be replaced by a mirror which reflects the light back through the first half of the network. In this paper, we show how networks obtained for still other classes of  $C(\omega)$  can be made to have this symmetry. Having done this, the techniques of Part IV can then be used directly.

B-2

The forms of the networks obtained using the procedures of Part I and Part V are shown in Figs. 1 and 2 respectively. In Fig. 1, each stage of the network consists of a birefringent crystal, while in Fig. 2 each stage consists of a birefringent crystal and optical compensator (wave-plate). The network of Fig. 1 can be considered to be a special case of the network of Fig. 2 in which all optical compensators introduce zero retardation. The  $\phi_i$  shown in Figs. 1 and 2 are the absolute rotation angles of the stages. The  $\phi_i$  denote the angle between the slow axis of each crystal and the transmission axis of the input polarizer. It will also be useful to deal with relative angles ( $\theta_i$ ) of the stages, defined as the angle between the slow axis of a stage and the slow axis of the preceding stage. The  $\theta_i$  are related to the  $\phi_i$  by

$$\theta_{1} = \phi_{1},$$

$$\theta_{2} = \phi_{2} - \phi_{1},$$

$$\theta_{3} = \phi_{3} - \phi_{2},$$

$$\vdots$$

$$\theta_{n} = \phi_{n} - \phi_{n-1},$$

$$\theta_{p} = \phi_{p} - \phi_{n}.$$
(1)

K

We now derive a property of these networks which will be used throughout this paper. Suppose that we alter a birefringent network by (a) for the jth stage, changing  $\theta$  to  $-\theta$  and adding  $\pi$  radians of optical compensation, and (b) for the preceding stage, adding  $\pi$  radians of optical compensation. The output of the new network will be identical to that of the original network.

To prove this statement, we will use the Jones calculus<sup>4</sup>. Figure 3 shows the jth stage of the network of Fig. 2. The u and v directions are those of the S and F





,

B-4



Į

axes of the preceding (j-1) stage while u' and v' denote the S and F directions of the jth stage. The complex amplitudes of the E field of the incoming and outgoing light are related by

$$\mathbf{E'} = \mathbf{M} \mathbf{S}(-\theta_j) \mathbf{E},$$

which, when written out, is

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{E}_{u'} \\ \mathbf{E}_{v'} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{b}_{j}} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{a}\,\omega} \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta_{j} & \sin \theta_{j} \\ -\sin \theta_{j} & \cos \theta_{j} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{E}_{u} \\ \mathbf{E}_{v} \end{pmatrix},$$
$$= \begin{pmatrix} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{b}_{j}} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{a}\,\omega} & e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{b}_{j}} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{a}\,\omega} \\ e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{b}_{j}} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{a}\,\omega} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{b},j} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{a}\,\omega} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{b},j} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{b},j} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{a}\,\omega} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{b},j} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{a}\,\omega} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{b},j} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{a}\,\omega} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{b},j} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{a}\,\omega} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{b},j} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{a}\,\omega} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{b},j} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{a}\,\omega} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{a}\,\omega} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{b},j} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{a}\,\omega} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{b},j} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{a}\,\omega} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{b},j} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{a}\,\omega} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{a}\,\omega} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{a}\,\omega} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{a}\,\omega} e^{-\mathbf{i}\mathbf{a}\,\omega} e$$

The quantity  $b_j$  is the retardation of the compensator while  $a\omega$  is the retardation of the crystal. For convenience, let us denote the 2x2 matrix of (2) by

$$\begin{pmatrix} A_{j} & B_{j} \\ C_{j} & D_{j} \end{pmatrix} .$$
(3)

Suppose that we now change  $\theta_j$  to  $-\theta_j$ , and  $b_j$  to  $b_j + \pi$ . This causes

 $e^{-ib}_{j}$  to become  $-e^{-ib}_{j}$ , and  $\sin \theta_{j}$  to become  $-\sin \theta_{j}$ . The new matrix for the jth stage is thus

$$\begin{pmatrix} -A_{j} & B_{j} \\ -C_{j} & D_{j} \end{pmatrix} .$$
 (4)



In addition, for the preceding stage let us change  $b_{j-1}$  to  $b_{j-1} + \pi$ . This means that the matrix for the (j-1)th stage is

$$\begin{pmatrix} -A_{j-1} & -B_{j-1} \\ C_{j-1} & D_{j-1} \end{pmatrix} .$$
 (5)

The matrix for the (j-1)th and jth stages together is found by multiplying (4) and (5).

$$\begin{pmatrix} -A_{j} & B_{j} \\ -C_{j} & D_{j} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -A_{j-1} & -B_{j-1} \\ C_{j-1} & D_{j-1} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} A_{j}A_{j-1} + B_{j}C_{j-1} & A_{j}B_{j-1} + B_{j}D_{j-1} \\ C_{j}A_{j-1} + D_{j}C_{j-1} & C_{j}B_{j-1} + D_{j}D_{j-1} \end{pmatrix}$$
(6)

But this is identical to the matrix which would be obtained for the original (j-1)th and jth stages. Therefore in making the changes  $\theta_j \rightarrow -\theta_j$ ,  $b_j \rightarrow b_j + \pi$ , and  $b_{j-1} \rightarrow b_{j-1} + \pi$ , we have not altered the network's behavior; the desired result has thus been proved.

We make one further observation. Suppose that we make the changes  $\theta_1 \rightarrow -\theta_1$  and  $b_1 \rightarrow b_1 + \pi$  on the first stage of a birefringent network. Since there is no preceding stage, the question arises as to how the network's performance is affected. It can be shown that such a change causes the amplitude-transmittance  $C(\omega)$  of the network to become  $-C(\omega)$ . As noted in Part III<sup>5</sup>, this sign change is of no practical importance.

# II. TECHNIQUES WHICH ARE APPLICABLE WHEN THE $C_i$ ARE REAL

Two basic types of lossless birefringent network are shown in Figs. 1 and 2. For both types, the amplitude transmittance  $C(\omega)$  is given by

$$C(\omega) = C_0 + C_1 e^{-ia\omega} + C_2 e^{-i2a\omega} + \cdots + C_n e^{-ina\omega}.$$
(7)

When the  $C_i$  of (7) are real, the synthesis procedure of Part I can be used and the type of network shown in Fig. 1 results. When the  $C_i$  are complex, the procedure of Part V must be used and the type of network shown in Fig. 2 results. Part IV gave two double-pass procedures (methods A and B) and the circumstances under which they could be applied when  $C(\omega)$  contained real  $C_i$ . In this section we show that for real  $C_i$ , additional circumstances exist under which double-pass procedures can be used.

In Part IV it was seen that Methods A and B are applicable to networks exhibiting the symmetry shown in Fig. 4a. In Fig. 4a, symmetry requirements are given both in terms of the  $\phi_i$  and  $\theta_i$ . Although optical compensators are not present in Fig. 4a, equivalent symmetry requirements can be stated for a network which contains them. These requirements are shown in Fig. 4b, where the  $b_i$  are the retardations introduced by the respective optical compensators. For both Figs. 4a and 4b, the symmetry requirements may be summarized as follows. The birefringent network (a) must have its input and output polarizers crossed, and (b) must have stages which are symmetric (both with respect to rotation angle and compensator delay) about the midpoint of the network. Satisfaction of these criteria allows methods A and B of Part IV to be applied.

Theorem 5b of Part III states that if the  $C_1$  of the desired transmittance are chosen so that  $C_0 = -C_n$ ,  $C_1 = -C_{n-1}$ ,  $C_2 = -C_{n-2}$ ,  $C_3 = -C_{n-3}$ ,  $\cdots$  etc., then each of the resulting lossless birefringent networks will have  $\theta_1 = -\theta_p \pm 90^\circ$ ,  $\theta_2 = -\theta_n$ ,  $\theta_3 = -\theta_{n-1}$ ,  $\theta_4 = -\theta_{n-2}$ ,  $\cdots$  etc. As pointed out in Part IV, these angle restrictions are precisely those required for using methods A and B and hence doublepass procedures can be applied.

Suppose, however, that the  $C_i$  satisfy  $C_0 = C_n$ ,  $C_1 = C_{n-1}$ ,  $C_2 = C_{n-2}$ ,  $C_3 = C_{n-3}$ ,  $\cdots$  etc. Theorem 4b of Part III states that the resulting birefringent

B-9





B-10





B-11

.

••

networks have  $\theta_1 = \theta_p \mp 90^\circ$ ,  $\theta_2 = \theta_n$ ,  $\theta_3 = \theta_{n-1}$ ,  $\cdots$  etc. This symmetry is not appropriate for double-pass techniques, but we now show how it can be made so when n is odd.

We illustrate by considering the case of n = 9. If  $C(\omega)$  is chosen so that  $C_0 = C_9$ ,  $C_1 = C_8$ ,  $C_2 = C_7$ ,  $C_3 = C_6$ , and  $C_4 = C_5$ , the networks obtained using the synthesis procedure of Part I will have the symmetry tabulated in Table I. Let us now make use of the result discussed in Section I of this paper. If we change  $\theta_9$  to  $-\theta_2$ ,  $\theta_9$  to  $\pi$ , and  $\theta_8$  to  $\pi$ , the transmittance of the network is unchanged. Similarly we can change  $\theta_7$  to  $-\theta_4$ ,  $b_7$  to  $\pi$ ,  $b_6$  to  $\pi$ ;  $\theta_5$  to  $-\theta_5$ ,  $b_5$  to  $\pi$ ,  $b_4$  to  $\pi$ ;  $\theta_3$  to  $-\theta_3$ ,  $b_3$  to  $\pi$ ,  $b_2$  to  $\pi$ ; and  $\theta_1$  to  $-\theta_1$ ,  $b_1$  to  $\pi$  without affecting the transmittance of the network. The network now has the symmetry shown in Table II which is the symmetry required. Hence methods A and B are directly applicable. Similar techniques apply for other odd values of n. If n is even, the use of the above procedure does not result in a symmetrical network and hence these techniques do not succeed. To date, comparable ones have not been found which apply when n is even.

In methods A and B, the symmetric network is halved by cutting it through the middle stage. For this example, the 5th stage is the middle stage and consists of a crystal of length L and compensator whose retardation is  $\pi$  radians. When this stage is halved, the components are a crystal of length L/2 and a compensator whose retardation is  $\pi/2$  radians.

# III. TECHNIQUES WHICH ARE APPLICABLE WHEN THE $C_i$ ARE COMPLEX

Part V described a procedure for synthesizing birefringent networks whose transmittances contain complex  $C_i$ . The form of the resulting network is shown in Fig. 2. This section describes how a double-pass procedure can be obtained for use with this class of network.

B-12

STAGE	ROTATION ANGLE	COMPENSATOR RETARDATION (radians)
1	$\theta_1 = \theta_1$	$\mathbf{b_1} = 0$
2	$\theta_2 = \theta_2$	$b_2 = 0$
3	$\theta_3 = \theta_3$	$b_3 = 0$
4	$\theta_4 = \theta_4$	$b_4 = 0$
5	$\theta_5 = \theta_5$	b <sub>5</sub> = 0
6	$\theta_6 = \theta_5$	$b_6 = 0$
7	$\theta_7 = \theta_4$	$b_7 = 0$
8	$\theta_8 = \theta_3$	$b_8 = 0$
9	$\theta_9 = \theta_2$	$b_9 = 0$
output polarizer	$     \theta_{\mathbf{p}} = \theta_{1} \pm 90^{\circ} $	$b_p = 0$

Ņ



.

STAGE	ROTATION ANGLE	COMPENSATOR RETARDATION (radians)
1	$\theta_1 \rightarrow -\theta_1$	$b_1 \rightarrow \pi$
2	$\theta_2 = \theta_2$	b <sub>2</sub> π
3	θ <sub>3</sub> θ <sub>3</sub>	b <sub>3</sub> → π
4	$\theta_4 = \theta_4$	b <sub>4</sub> <i>ग</i>
5	$\theta_5 \rightarrow -\theta_5$	b <sub>5</sub> ► π
6	$\theta_6 = \theta_5$	b <sub>6</sub> → π
7	$\theta_7 - \theta_4$	b <sub>7</sub> → π
8	$\theta_8 = \theta_3$	$b_8 \rightarrow \pi$
9	$\theta_9 - \theta_2$	b <sub>9</sub> — <i>п</i>
output polarizer	$\theta_{p} = \theta_{1} \pm 90^{\circ}$	$b_p = 0$

Table II

•

Our goal will again be to obtain a network having the symmetry shown in Fig. 4b. We begin by stating a theorem. Asterisks denote complex conjugates.

## Theorem

If the  $C_i$  of the desired transmittance are chosen so that  $C_0 = C_n^*$ ,  $C_1 = C_{n-1}^*$ ,  $C_2 = C_{n-2}^*$ ,  $C_3 = C_{n-3}^*$ ,  $\cdots$  etc, then the resulting lossless birefringent networks have  $\theta_1 = -\theta_p + 90^\circ$ ,  $\theta_2 = \theta_n$ ,  $\theta_3 = \theta_{n-1}$ ,  $\theta_4 = \theta_{n-2}$ ,  $\cdots$  etc, and  $b_1 = b_n - \pi$ ,  $b_2 = b_{n-1}$ ,  $b_3 = b_{n-2}$ ,  $b_4 = b_{n-3}$ ,  $\cdots$  etc.

The proof of this theorem is similar to the proofs of Theorems 4b and 5b in Part III and hence will not be given here.

We will again use a network with n = 9 for illustration; the technique is applicable only when n is odd. If the  $C_i$  satisfy the requirements listed above, the resulting networks will have the symmetry shown in Table III. We next apply the result of Section I by noting that  $C(\omega)$  for the network remains unaltered if we change  $\theta_8$  to  $-\theta_3$ ,  $\theta_8$  to  $b_2 + \pi$ ,  $b_7$  to  $b_3 + \pi$ ;  $\theta_6$  to  $-\theta_5$ ,  $b_6$  to  $b_4 + \pi$ ,  $b_5$  to  $b_5 + \pi$ ;  $\theta_4$  to  $-\theta_4$ ,  $b_4$  to  $b_4 + \pi$ ,  $b_3$  to  $b_3 + \pi$ ; and  $\theta_2$  to  $-\theta_2$ ,  $b_2$  to  $b_2 + \pi$ ,  $b_1$  to  $b_1 + \pi$ . In addition,  $b_p$  is changed to 0. This new network, whose  $\theta_1$  and  $b_1$  are listed in Table IV, has the symmetry necessary for application of methods A and B, and hence the desired result has been obtained. For other odd values of n, the same technique can be applied.

Several items should be briefly mentioned at this point. The first is to note that when the  $C_i$  are complex, one begins manipulating the (n-1)th stage while when the  $C_i$  are real, one starts with the nth stage. The second point concerns our setting  $b_p$  to zero. This step is necessary if the input and output polarizers are to be the "mirror-images" of each other. The result of setting  $b_p$  to zero is that the transmittance of the double-pass network will be (exp ib<sub>p</sub>).  $C(\omega)$  instead of the

B-15

STAGE	ROTATION ANGLE	COMPENSATOR RETARDATION (radians)
1	$\theta_1 = \theta_1$	$b_1 = b_1$
2	$\theta_2 = \theta_2$	$b_2 = b_2$
3	$\theta_3 = \theta_3$	$b_3 = b_3$
4	$\theta_4 = \theta_4$	$b_4 = b_4$
5	$\theta_5 = \theta_5$	$\mathbf{b_5} = \mathbf{b_5}$
6	$\theta_6 = \theta_5$	$b_6 = b_4$
7	$\theta_7 = \theta_4$	$b_7 = b_3$
8	$\theta_8 = \theta_3$	$b_8 = b_2$
9	$\theta_9 = \theta_2$	$b_9 = b_1 + \pi$
output polarizer	$\theta_{\mathbf{p}} = -\theta_{1} + 90^{\circ}$	$b_p = b_p$

Table III

.

STAGE	ROTATION ANGLE	COMPENSATOR RETARDATION (radians)
1	$\theta_1 = \theta_1$	$b_1 \rightarrow b_1 + \pi$
2	$\theta_2 \rightarrow -\theta_2$	$b_2 \rightarrow b_2 + \pi$
3	$\theta_3 = \theta_3$	$b_3 \rightarrow b_3 + \pi$
4	$\theta_4 \rightarrow -\theta_4$	$b_4 \rightarrow b_4 + \pi$
5	$\theta_5 = \theta_5$	$b_5 \rightarrow b_5 + \pi$
6	θ <sub>6</sub> θ <sub>5</sub>	$b_6 \rightarrow b_4 + \pi$
7	$\theta_7 = \theta_4$	$b_7 \rightarrow b_3 + \pi$
8	θ <sub>8</sub> θ <sub>3</sub>	$b_8 \rightarrow b_2 + \pi$
9	$\theta_{9} = \theta_{2}$	$b_9 = b_1 + \pi$
output polarizer	$\theta_{\mathbf{p}} = -\theta_{1} + 90^{\circ}$	$b_p = 0$

Table IV

,

.

desired  $C(\omega)$ . The difference is only a constant phase factor, which in most instances is unimportant. Furthermore, if  $C_0$  is originally chosen to be real,  $b_p = 0$  and the need for the final polarizer is automatically eliminated.

Finally, if the  $C_i$  satisfy  $C_0 = -C_n^*$ ,  $C_1 = -C_{n-1}^*$ ,  $C_2 = -C_{n-2}^*$ ,  $C_3 = -C_{n-3}^* \cdots$  etc., the technique of this section is also applicable. This can be seen by noting that if we multiply such a  $C(\omega)$  by the factor i, the new  $C(\omega)$  satisfies the constraints of the theorem given in this section.

## IV. DISCUSSION

We have seen in Sections II and III that if certain restrictions are satisfied by the  $C_i$ , double-pass synthesis procedures can be  $\exp_{L-ij} d$ . An important question, then, is how severely these restrictions limit one in choosing a  $C(\omega)$ . In discussing this, it will be convenient to deal with  $K(\omega)$  as well as  $C(\omega)$ .  $K(\omega)$  is formed by multiplying  $C(\omega)$  by  $e^{i(n/2)a\omega}$  and therefore has the form

$$K(\omega) = C_0 e^{i(n/2)a\omega} + C_1 e^{i[(n/2) - 1]a\omega} + \dots + C_{n-1} e^{-i[(n/2) - 1]a\omega} + C_n e^{-i(n/2)a\omega}$$
(8)

The usefulness of  $K(\omega)$  stems from the fact that it is often real, whereas  $C(\omega)$  is complex. In choosing a desired transmittance, it is often written first in the form of Eq. (8) and then converted to  $C(\omega)$ .

In terms of  $K(\omega)$ , the restrictions upon the  $C_i$  have the following effects:

(a) The restrictions  $C_0 = -C_n$ ,  $C_1 = -C_{n-1}$ ,  $C_2 = -C_{n-2}$ ,  $C_3 = -C_{n-3}$ ,  $\cdots$  etc, which were necessary in Part IV of this series are equivalent to requiring that  $K(\omega)$  be purely imaginary and have odd symmetry.
(b) The restrictions  $C_0 = C_n$ ,  $C_1 = C_{n-1}$ ,  $C_2 = C_{n-2}$ ,  $C_3 = C_{n-3}$ , ... etc. which were necessary in Section II of this paper are equivalent to requiring that K( $\omega$ ) be real and have even symmetry.

(c) The restrictions  $C_0 = C_n^*$ ,  $C_1 = C_{n-1}^*$ ,  $C_2 = C_{n-2}^*$ ,  $C_3 = C_{n-3}^*$ , ... etc. which were necessary in Section III of this paper are equivalent to requiring that K( $\omega$ ) be real. The symmetry of K( $\omega$ ) is not restricted in any way. Thus these restrictions (particularly those of Section III) impose relatively little constraint upon the choice of desired amplitude transmittance.

Finally we note that the procedure of Section II can be considered to be a special case of the more general procedure of Section III.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENT

The authors gratefully acknowledge stimulating discussions with R. B. Emmons.

## FOOTNOTES

- \* This work was supported by the National Aeronautics and Space Administration under Contract NAS8-20570.
- 1. E. O. Ammann, J. Opt. Soc. Am. 56, 952 (1966).
- S. E. Harris, E. O. Ammann, and I. C. Chang, J. Opt. Soc. Am. 54, 1267 (1964).
- 3. E. O. Ammann and J. M. Yarborough, J. Opt. Soc. Am. 56, (1966).
- 4. R. C. Jones, J. Opt. Soc. Am. 31, 488 (1941).
- 5. E. O. Ammann, J. Opt. Soc. Am. 56, 943 (1966).

## CAPTIONS FOR FIGURES AND TABLES

- Fig. 1 Basic configuration of birefringent network (4 stages) obtained from the synthesis procedure of Part I. F and S denote the "fast" and "slow" axes of the birefringent crystals.
- Fig. 2 Basic configuration of birefringent network (4 stages) obtained from the synthesis procedure of Part V.
- Fig. 3 Single stage of the network of Fig. 2. Components are a birefringent crystal and optical compensator.
- Fig. 4 Network symmetry which is required in order for methods A and B
  (of Part IV of this series) to be applicable. (a) Lossless network
  without compensators, and (b) lossless network with compensators.
- Table I Network symmetry which results for n = 9 when the (real)  $C_i$  are chosen to satisfy  $C_0 = C_9$ ,  $C_1 = C_8$ ,  $C_2 = C_7$ ,  $C_3 = C_6$ , and  $C_4 = C_5$ .
- Table IINetwork which is equivalent to that listed in Table I.
- Table III Network symmetry which results for n = 9 when the (complex)  $C_i$  are chosen to satisfy  $C_0 = C_9^*$ ,  $C_1 = C_8^*$ ,  $C_2 = C_7^*$ ,  $C_3 = C_6^*$ , and  $C_4 = C_5^*$ .
- Table IV Network which is equivalent to that listed in Table III.

Appendix C

N 67-20525

## SYNTHESIS OF ELECTRO-OPTIC MODULATORS FOR AMPLITUDE

MODULATION OF LIGHT

E. O. Ammann and J. M. Yarborough Electronic Defense Laboratories Sylvania Electronic Systems - Western Operation Mountain View, California

to be submitted for publication

#### I. INTRODUCTION

Amplitude modulation of light using an electro-optic medium has been the subject of onsiderable investigation the past few years. Most of this work has centered on (1) studying comising electro-optic materials [1] - [8] and (2) finding suitable means for applying tectric fields to these materials. The latter work can be conveniently divided into investiations of cavity-type modulators [9] - [11] and traveling-wave modulators [12] - [17]. his work has resulted in several useful electro-optic materials and a variety of ingenious orms of amplitude modulators.

It is perhaps surprising, then, that all of these devices produce amplitude modulation in ssentially the same fashion as the simplified modulator of Fig. 1. That is, regardless of ne material used and the manner in which the modulating field is applied, the model of ig. 1 can be used to describe the essential modulation characteristics of virtually all xisting electro-optic amplitude modulators. (We have assumed, for simplicity, that ynchronism conditions are perfectly satisfied, that the medium is not naturally birefringent n the direction of light propagation, etc.)

The modulator model of Fig. 1 consists of an input polarizer, an electro-optic medium, quarter-wave plate, and an output polarizer. The birefringence of the electro-optic nedium is assumed to be directly proportional to the modulating signal, a condition which 3 satisfied exactly by Pockels-effect materials and approximately by Kerr-effect materials iased with a dc voltage. The modulator of Fig. 1 has an amplitude-transmission vs. pplied voltage characteristic

$$K(v) = \frac{(1+i)}{2\sqrt{2}} e^{i\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_0}} + \frac{(1-i)}{2\sqrt{2}} e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_0}} = \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_0} - 45^\circ\right), \quad (1)$$

here  $V_0$  is the half-wave retardation voltage.

C-2



It is well known [18] - [19] that this K(v) is not the optimum characteristic for an amplitude modulator. The device of Fig. 1, and therefore existing amplitude modulators, have performance characteristics which depart from ideal. The result is that harmonics, intermodulation products, and other undesirable components are present in the modulator output. These distortion components are small when small depths of modulation are used, but their effects become more pronounced at greater modulation depths.

One of the purposes of this paper is to describe a synthesis procedure which allows the realization of amplitude modulators having an arbitrarily specifiable voltage transfer function. With this synthesis procedure it is possible to design modulators whose properties are tailored to the particular application at hand. The synthesized modulator (shown in Fig. 3) consists of a series of cascaded stages between an input and output polarizer. Each stage contains electro-optic material and an optical compensator [20] (wave-plate). The number of stages required depends upon the complexity of the desired voltage transfer function K(v). It should be emphasized that there is nothing new about any of the components which make up the synthesized modulator; rather, it is the arrangement of these standard components which results in a device whose characteristics can be arbitrarily prescribed.

This paper also discusses the transfer function of an ideal amplitude modulator and methods of approximating it. The ideal transfer function depends upon the type of detector employed to demodulate the signal. Two cases are considered: the use of (a) envelope detection, and (b) square-law detection. While it is possible in theory to synthesize a modulator having an ideal transfer function, it would contain an infinite number of stages. Hence in practice it is necessary to find suitable approximations to the ideal function which can be realized by modulators containing a finite number of stages. Several approximation techniques are described and compared on the basis of distortion present in the <u>demodulated</u> signal. Finally, modulator designs which correspond to these approximations are tabulated.

C-4

#### **II.** THE SYNTHESIS PROCEDURE

#### A. General

The procedure to be described for synthesizing amplitude modulators draws heavily upon the results given in a series of papers [21] - [26] dealing with birefringent network synthesis. Since several papers of this series are especially applicable, we will begin by mentioning their results and how they apply to the problem at hand.

Part I [21] of the series reported a procedure for synthesizing birefringent networks having a prescribed frequency transfer function  $C(\omega)$ . The desired transfer function is written as

$$C(\omega) = C_0 + C_1 e^{-i\boldsymbol{\alpha}\omega} + C_2 e^{-i2\boldsymbol{\alpha}\omega} + \dots + C_n e^{-in\boldsymbol{\alpha}\omega}, \qquad (2)$$

where the number of terms employed is finite but arbitrary.  $C(\omega)$  might typically be the complex Fourier series representation of a given function truncated after a certain number of terms. Any method, however, may be used to choose  $C(\omega)$  as long as each  $C_i$  is real. Figure 2 shows the form of the network resulting from the synthesis procedure of Part I. The network consists of a series of identical naturally-birefringent crystals between an input and output polarizer. The "fast" and "slow" axes of the crystal are denoted by F and S, respectively. A network containing n crystals is necessary to realize a  $C(\omega)$  having n+1 terms. For a given  $C(\omega)$ , the synthesis procedure is used to calculate the rotation angles  $(\emptyset_i)$  of the crystals and the output polarizer.

Because the procedure of Part I requires that the  $C_i$  be real, it can be used only when  $C(\omega)$  is Hermetian (i.e., the real part of  $C(\omega)$  is even and the imaginary part is odd). Part V [26] describes a generalization of the synthesis procedure of Part I which allows the realization of  $C(\omega)$  having complex  $C_i$ . An n - stage birefringent network is again required to produce a  $C(\omega)$  having n+1 terms, but each stage now consists of a birefringent crystal and optical compensator. Such a network is shown in Fig. 3. The synthesis procedure of



·

Part V determines the rotation angle of each crystal, the retardation introduced by each compensator, and the rotation angle of the output polarizer.

Recently it has been noted [25] that the techniques which were developed in Parts I-V [21] - [24], [26] for synthesizing optical networks composed of naturally-birefringent crystals can also be used, with very little modification, in the synthesis of networks composed of electro-optic crystals (or liquids). The two situations are, in fact, analogous. If a Pockels-effect material is used, the voltage applied to the electro-optic medium plays the same role that frequency does in naturally-birefringent materials. If a Kerr-effect material is used, frequency is replaced by the square of the voltage. This means that the same techniques which were developed to synthesize birefringent networks having arbitrary frequency transfer functions can be used to synthesize electro-optic networks having arbitrary transmission vs. applied voltage characteristics. In Ref. [25] it was shown that a procedure analogous to the synthesis procedure of Part I could be used to design electro-optic shutters with improved characteristics. In this paper we will see that a procedure analogous to the more general procedure of Part V can be used to synthesize amplitude modulators having specified modulation characteristics.

Since the modulator synthesis procedure is a direct analogy of the procedure described in Part V, only a brief discussion will be given. It is assumed in what follows that the reader is familiar with the material covered in Part V [26] and in Ref. [25].

The frequency-voltage analogy between a birefringent network and an electro-optic network can be understood in the following way. The basic building block of the birefringent networks of Parts I-V is the naturally birefringent crystal shown in Fig. 4. Light which enters the crystal with its electric field polarized in the F direction is operated upon by the frequency transfer function  $e^{i \alpha \omega/2}$ , while light polarized along S is operated upon by  $e^{-i \alpha \omega/2}$ . The quantity  $\alpha$  is proportional to the crystal's birefringence and is given by

$$\alpha = L \Delta \eta / c,$$

C--7



where L is the length of the crystal,  $\Lambda \eta$  is the difference between the crystal's extraordinary and ordinary indices of refraction, and c is the velocity of light in a vacuum.

Now suppose that the building block of Fig. 4 is an electro-optic cell, and that its birefringence is linearly proportional to the applied electric field. The F and S frequency transfer functions are again  $e^{i \alpha \omega/2}$  and  $e^{-i \alpha \omega/2}$ . In this case, however, Q is due to the applied electric field while in the previous case,  $\alpha$  was due to the natural birefringence of the medium Hence we can rewrite the F and S transfer functions of the electro-optic

cell in the form e  $i \frac{\pi}{2} \frac{v}{v_0}$  and e  $-i \frac{\pi}{2} \frac{v}{v_0}$ , where v is the voltage applied to the medium and  $v_0$  is the voltage required to produce one-half wave ( $\pi$  radians) of retardation. In writing the F and S transfer functions of the electro-optic cell in this way,

several simplifying assumptions h. we been made. Most important of these is that perfect synchronism exists between the modulating voltage and the transmitted light, and hence that transit-time effects are not a problem.

The transfer functions for the electro-optic cell are seen to depend upon v in exactly the same fashion as the transfer functions for the birefringent crystal depend upon frequency<sup>1</sup>. Thus the transfer function of a cell or series of cells varies with v in precisely the same fashion that the transfer function of a birefringent crystal or series of crystals varies with  $\omega$ . Since we are able from Part V to synthesize a birefringent network with an arbitrary transmission vs. frequency characteristic, we are also able to synthesize an electro-optic modulator which has an arbitrary transmission vs. applied-voltage characteristic.

Using the analogy just discussed, the desired voltage transfer function for the modulator is written as

C-9



•

.

.

Figure 4

$$K(v) = C_{0}e^{i\frac{n}{2}\frac{\pi}{V_{0}}} + C_{1}e^{i\frac{(n-2)}{2}\frac{\pi}{V_{0}}} + C_{2}e^{i\frac{(n-4)}{2}\frac{\pi}{V_{0}}} + C_{2}e^{i\frac{(n-4)}{2}\frac{\pi}{V_{0}}}$$

$$-i \frac{m-1}{2} \frac{v}{V_{0}} -i \frac{m-2}{2} \frac{v}{V_{0}} -i \frac{m-2}{2} \frac{v}{V_{0}} -i \frac{m}{2} \frac{v}{V_{0}} + C_{n}e$$

$$+ \dots + C_{n-2}e + C_{n-1}e + C_{n}e$$
(3)

The synthesized modulator has the general form shown in Fig. 3, with each stage composed of an electro-optic cell of half-wave voltage  $V_0$  and an optical compensator. All cells must exhibit the same birefringence; hence (1) all cells must be identical, and (2) all cells must have the same signal applied to them. Note that the manner of applying the modulating field to the medium has not in any way bee.. restricted. Hence it is immaterial whether the modulating field is transverse or longitudinal, is applied by resonant structure or travelingwave structure, as long as the induced birefringent axes are oriented as in Fig. 4.

### B. Outline of Synthesis Procedure

The steps to be followed in synthesizing an amplitude modulator are summarized below:

 Choose the desired transmission vs. voltage characteristic K(v) for the amplitude modulator and write it in the form of Eq. (3). The C<sub>i</sub> may be complex.

$$-i\frac{n}{2}\frac{\pi}{V_0}$$

(2) Multiply K(v) by e , which gives

$$C(v) = e^{-i\frac{n}{2}\frac{\pi}{V_0}\frac{v}{V_0}} K(v) = C_0 + C_1 e^{-i\frac{\pi}{V_0}\frac{v}{V_0}} + C_2 e^{-i2\frac{\pi}{V_0}\frac{v}{V_0}} + \dots$$

$$-in \pi \frac{v}{V_0} + C_n e \qquad (4)$$

(3) Follow steps (3) through (8) of Section II-C of Ref. [26]. This determines the rotation angle of each electro-optic cell, the delay introduced by each optical compensator, and the rotation angle of the output polarizer.

## III. AMPLITUDE MODULATORS FOR USE WITH ENVELOPE DETECTORS

As mentioned earlier, the choice of an ideal characteristic for an amplitude modulator depends upon the properties of the detector used to demodulate the signal. In this section we discuss the ideal characteristic (and approximations to it) for an amplitude modulator which is used with an envelope detector. Although envelope detectors at optical frequencies are not presently available, this case is still of interest since optical heterodyne detection can be employed to shift the amplitude-modulated signal down in frequency to a range in which envelope detectors are available.

# A. Ideal Modulator Characteristic

From conventional modulation theory, it is well known [27] that a linear modulator characteristic gives distortionless results when envelope detection is employed. Hence one possible<sup>2</sup> ideal voltage transfer function for an amplitude modulator is that shown in Fig. 5. Since an electro-optic amplitude modulator does not add energy to the carrier, the magnitude of the characteristic can not exceed unity. Note that  $v/V_0$  (voltage applied to each cell/ the half-wave retardation voltage of each cell) is plotted along the abscissa. This normalized form of voltage is quite convenient and will be used throughout this paper.

Before proceeding further, let us establish performance criteria so that we may make quantitative comparisons of the modulators synthesized. There are a number of different criteria which could be employed, and hence our choice must be somewhat arbitrary. We will assume that a single-tone signal of the form

$$\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{V} \cos \omega_{\mathrm{m}} \mathbf{\dot{t}}$$
(5)

is the modulating signal. Ideally then, the demodulated signal should be directly proportional to (5). That is, the amplitude of the fundamental ( $\omega_{\rm m}$  component) should be linearly proportional to V; furthermore there should be no harmonics present at  $2\omega_{\rm m}$ ,  $3\omega_{\rm m}$ , etc. Hence as a measure of performance we will examine the detector output for (1) the deviation from linearity of the fundamental's amplitude, and (2) the amplitudes of the second and third harmonics.





.

}

.

Using these criteria, let us establish that the characteristic of Fig. 5 is indeed an ideal characteristic. The analytic expression for the characteristic of Fig. 5 is

$$K(v) = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{v}{V_0}.$$
 (6)

Assume that the incoming optical signal is of frequency  $\omega$ , has an electric field of unity amplitude, and hence is given by

$$E_{in} = e^{i\omega t}.$$
 (7)

The signal  $E_{out}$  leaving the modulator is  $E_{in}K(v)$ , and is therefore given by

$$E_{out} = \left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{v}{V_0}\right) e^{i\omega t}$$

Assuming that  $v = V \cos \omega_m t$ , we obtain

$$E_{out} = \left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{V}{V_0} \cos \omega_m t\right) e^{i\omega t}, \qquad (8)$$

the signal which impinges on the detector. The detector's output  $I_{out}$  is proportional to the envelope of  $E_{out}$ , which is just the term in parentheses (provided it remains non-negative). Thus the output is

$$I_{out} = k \left( \frac{1}{2} + \frac{V}{V_0} \cos \omega_m t \right), \qquad (9)$$

where k is a constant of proportionality. We see that the detector output of Eq. (9) contains a fundamental whose amplitude is linearly proportional to V, and no higher harmonics. This satisfies our criteria for perfect modulator performance.

# B. Formulas for Amplitudes of Fundamental and Harmonics

The modulators synthesized using the procedure of Section II will have voltage transfer functions of the form shown in Eq. (3). We derive here general expressions for the amplitudes of the fundamental and harmonics present in the detector output. The resulting expressions are functions of  $V/V_0$ , and contain the C<sub>i</sub> as parameters. For this calculation and others later, it will be convenient to separately consider the cases of n odd and n even.

## 1. n odd

For n odd, expressions are derived for 1, 3, 5, 7, and 9 stage networks. From Eq. (3), the voltage transfer functions for these networks are seen to be

**n** = 1 
$$K(v) = C_0 e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_0}} + C_1 e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_0}},$$
 (10a)

$$n = 5 K(v) = C_0 e^{-i\frac{5\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_0}} + C_1 e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_0}} + C_2 e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_0}} + C_3 e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_0}} + C_4 e^{-i\frac{5\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_0}}, (10c)$$

,

$$n = 7 K(v) = C_{0}e^{i\frac{7\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_{0}}} + C_{1}e^{i\frac{5\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_{0}}} + C_{2}e^{i\frac{3\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_{0}}} + C_{3}e^{i\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_{0}}} + C_{4}e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_{0}}} + C_{4}e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_{0}}} + C_{5}e^{-i\frac{3\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_{0}}} + C_{6}e^{-i\frac{5\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_{0}}} + C_{7}e^{-i\frac{7\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_{0}}}, (10d)$$

$$n = 9 K(v) = C_{0}e^{i\frac{9\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_{0}}} + C_{1}e^{i\frac{7\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_{0}}} + C_{2}e^{i\frac{5\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_{0}}} + C_{3}e^{i\frac{3\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_{0}}} + C_{4}e^{i\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_{0}}}$$

$$+ C_{5}e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2}}\frac{v}{v_{0}} + C_{6}e^{-i\frac{3\pi}{2}}\frac{v}{v_{0}} + C_{7}e^{-i\frac{5\pi}{2}}\frac{v}{v_{0}} + C_{8}e^{-i\frac{7\pi}{2}}\frac{v}{v_{0}} + C_{9}e^{-i\frac{9\pi}{2}}\frac{v}{v_{0}}$$

(10e)

We will go through the details of the computation for n = 9 only. Results for n = 1, 3, 5, and 7 are obtained from the n = 9 results by setting appropriate  $C_i$  equal to zero and renumbering the remaining  $C_{i}$ .

At this point we will impose the requirement that our approximating K(v) be real. If a complex K(v) is used, the phase as well as the amplitude of the demodulated fundamental will depend upon V. Hence for the envelope detector case, a real K(v) should be employed in order to avoid phase distortion. This means that in Eq. (10e),  $C_0 = C_9^*$ ,  $C_1 = C_8^*$ ,  $C_2 = C_7^*$ ,  $C_3 = C_6^*$ , and  $C_4 = C_5^*$ . (Asterisks denote complex conjugate.) Using this fact, and letting

$$C_{i} = A_{i} + iB_{i}, \qquad (11)$$

Eq. (10e) can be rewritten as

$$K(v) = 2 \left[ A_0 \cos \frac{9\pi}{2} \frac{v}{V_0} + A_1 \cos \frac{7\pi}{2} \frac{v}{V_0} + A_2 \cos \frac{5\pi}{2} \frac{v}{V_0} + A_3 \cos \frac{3\pi}{2} \frac{v}{V_0} + A_4 \cos \frac{\pi}{2} \frac{v}{V_0} - B_0 \sin \frac{9\pi}{2} \frac{v}{V_0} - B_1 \sin \frac{7\pi}{2} \frac{v}{V_0} - B_2 \sin \frac{5\pi}{2} \frac{v}{V_0} - B_3 \sin \frac{3\pi}{2} \frac{v}{V_0} - B_4 \sin \frac{\pi}{2} \frac{v}{V_0} \right] .$$

$$(12)$$

If we assume that light incident upon the modulator is given by  $e^{i\omega t}$ , the light (E<sub>out</sub>) leaving the modulator is given by Eq. (12) multiplied by  $e^{i\omega t}$ . Substituting  $v = V \cos \omega_m t$ , we obtain

$$E_{out} = 2 \left[ A_0 \cos \left( \frac{9\pi}{2} \frac{V}{V_0} \cos \omega_m t \right) + A_1 \cos \left( \frac{7\pi}{2} \frac{V}{V_0} \cos \omega_m t \right) \right]$$

$$+ A_2 \cos \left( \frac{5\pi}{2} \frac{V}{V_0} \cos \omega_m t \right) + A_3 \cos \left( \frac{3\pi}{2} \frac{V}{V_0} \cos \omega_m t \right)$$

$$+ A_4 \cos \left( \frac{\pi}{2} \frac{V}{V_0} \cos \omega_m t \right) - B_0 \sin \left( \frac{9\pi}{2} \frac{V}{V_0} \cos \omega_m t \right)$$

$$- B_1 \sin \left( \frac{7\pi}{2} \frac{V}{V_0} \cos \omega_m t \right) - B_2 \sin \left( \frac{5\pi}{2} \frac{V}{V_0} \cos \omega_m t \right)$$

$$- B_3 \sin \left( \frac{3\pi}{2} \frac{V}{V_0} \cos \omega_m t \right) - B_4 \sin \left( \frac{\pi}{2} \frac{V}{V_0} \cos \omega_m t \right) \right] e^{i\omega t}. \quad (13)$$

Using the standard expansions for  $\cos(k\cos\theta)$  and  $\sin(k\cos\theta)$ , Eq. (13) becomes

,

$$\begin{split} \mathbf{E}_{\text{out}} &= \left\{ \cdot 2 \left[ \mathbf{A}_{0} \mathbf{J}_{0} \left( \frac{9 \pi \mathbf{V}}{2 \mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{A}_{1} \mathbf{J}_{0} \left( \frac{7 \pi \mathbf{V}}{2 \mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{A}_{2} \mathbf{J}_{0} \left( \frac{5 \pi \mathbf{V}}{2 \mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) \right) \\ &+ \mathbf{A}_{3} \mathbf{J}_{0} \left( \frac{3 \pi \mathbf{V}}{2 \mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{A}_{4} \mathbf{J}_{0} \left( \frac{\pi \mathbf{V}}{2 \mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) \right] \\ &- 4 \left[ \mathbf{B}_{0} \mathbf{J}_{1} \left( \frac{9 \pi \mathbf{V}}{2 \mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{B}_{1} \mathbf{J}_{1} \left( \frac{7 \pi \mathbf{V}}{2 \mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{B}_{2} \mathbf{J}_{1} \left( \frac{5 \pi \mathbf{V}}{2 \mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) \right) \\ &+ \mathbf{B}_{3} \mathbf{J}_{1} \left( \frac{3 \pi \mathbf{V}}{2 \mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{B}_{4} \mathbf{J}_{1} \left( \frac{\pi \mathbf{V}}{2 \mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) \right] \cos \omega_{\mathrm{m}} t \\ &- 4 \left[ \mathbf{A}_{0} \mathbf{J}_{2} \left( \frac{9 \pi \mathbf{V}}{2 \mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{A}_{1} \mathbf{J}_{2} \left( \frac{7 \pi \mathbf{V}}{2 \mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{A}_{2} \mathbf{J}_{2} \left( \frac{5 \pi \mathbf{V}}{2 \mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) \right) \\ &+ \mathbf{A}_{3} \mathbf{J}_{2} \left( \frac{3 \pi \mathbf{V}}{2 \mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{A}_{4} \mathbf{J}_{2} \left( \frac{\pi \mathbf{V}}{2 \mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) \right] \cos 2 \omega_{\mathrm{m}} t \\ &+ 4 \left[ \mathbf{B}_{0} \mathbf{J}_{3} \left( \frac{9 \pi \mathbf{V}}{2 \mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{B}_{1} \mathbf{J}_{3} \left( \frac{7 \pi \mathbf{V}}{2 \mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) \right] \cos 2 \omega_{\mathrm{m}} t \\ &+ \mathbf{B}_{3} \mathbf{J}_{3} \left( \frac{3 \pi \mathbf{V}}{2 \mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{B}_{4} \mathbf{J}_{3} \left( \frac{\pi \mathbf{V}}{2 \mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) \right] \cos 3 \omega_{\mathrm{m}} t \\ &+ \mathbf{M}_{3} \mathbf{V}_{0} \left( \frac{3 \pi \mathbf{V}}{2 \mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{B}_{4} \mathbf{J}_{3} \left( \frac{\pi \mathbf{V}}{2 \mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) \right] \cos 3 \omega_{\mathrm{m}} t \\ &+ \dots \right\} e^{i \omega t}, \end{split}$$

where  $J_n$  is a Bessel function of first kind and order n. As long as the bracketed term multiplying  $e^{i\omega t}$  in (14) remains non-negative, the detector output  $I_{out}$  will be directly proportional to it. Hence we obtain the desired result,

$$I_{out}/k = 2 \left[ A_0 J_0 \left( \frac{9 \pi V}{2 V_0} \right) + A_1 J_0 \left( \frac{7 \pi V}{2 V_0} \right) + A_2 J_0 \left( \frac{5 \pi V}{2 V_0} \right) \right]$$
$$+ A_3 J_0 \left( \frac{3 \pi V}{2 V_0} \right) + A_4 J_0 \left( \frac{\pi V}{2 V_0} \right) \right]$$

$$-4 \left[ B_{0}J_{1} \left( \frac{9\pi V}{2 V_{0}} \right) + B_{1}J_{1} \left( \frac{7\pi V}{2 V_{0}} \right) + B_{2}J_{1} \left( \frac{5\pi V}{2 V_{0}} \right) \right]$$

$$+ B_{3}J_{1} \left( \frac{3\pi V}{2 V_{0}} \right) + B_{4}J_{1} \left( \frac{\pi V}{2 V_{0}} \right) \right] \cos \omega_{m} t$$

$$-4 \left[ A_{0}J_{2} \left( \frac{9\pi V}{2 V_{0}} \right) + A_{1}J_{2} \left( \frac{7\pi V}{2 V_{0}} \right) + A_{2}J_{2} \left( \frac{5\pi V}{2 V_{0}} \right) \right]$$

$$+ A_{3}J_{2} \left( \frac{3\pi V}{2 V_{0}} \right) + A_{4}J_{2} \left( \frac{\pi V}{2 V_{0}} \right) \right] \cos 2\omega_{m} t$$

$$+ 4 \left[ B_{0}J_{3} \left( \frac{9\pi V}{2 V_{0}} \right) + B_{1}J_{3} \left( \frac{7\pi V}{2 V_{0}} \right) + B_{2}J_{3} \left( \frac{5\pi V}{2 V_{0}} \right) \right]$$

$$+ B_{3}J_{3} \left( \frac{3\pi V}{2 V_{0}} \right) + B_{4}J_{3} \left( \frac{\pi V}{2 V_{0}} \right) \right] \cos 3\omega_{m} t$$

$$+ higher order harmonics. (15)$$

+ higher order harmonics.

Equation (15) gives the dc, fundamental, second harmonic, and third harmonic components present in the envelope-detector output for n = 9. Note that the even harmonic amplitudes are determined by the  $B_i$  while the odd harmonic amplitudes depend upon the  $A_i$ . 2. n even

For n even, we will consider 2, 4, 6, 8, and 10 stage networks. The voltage transfer functions for these networks are given by

$$i\frac{2\pi v}{V_0} + C_1 e^{-i\frac{\pi v}{V_0}} + C_2 e^{-i\frac{\pi v}{V_0}} + C_4 e^{-i\frac{2\pi v}{V_0}}$$
(16b)

$$n = 6 \qquad K(v) = C_0 e^{-i\frac{3}{V_0}} + C_1 e^{-i\frac{\pi}{V_0}} + C_2 e^{-i\frac{\pi}{V_0}} + C_4 e^{-i\frac{\pi}{V_0}}$$

$$-i\frac{2\pi v}{V_{0}} -i\frac{3\pi v}{V_{0}} + C_{6}e$$
(16c)

$$-i\frac{\pi v}{V_{0}} -i\frac{2\pi v}{V_{0}} -i\frac{3\pi v}{V_{0}} -i\frac{4\pi v}{V_{0}} + C_{8}e^{-i\frac{4\pi v}{V_{0}}} + C_{8}e^{-i\frac{4\pi v}{V_{0}}}$$
(16d)

$$n = 10 K(v) = C_0 e^{-v} + C_1 e^{-v} + C_2 e^{-v} + C_3 e^{-v} + C_4 e^{-v}$$

$$-i\frac{\pi}{V_{0}} -i\frac{2\pi}{V_{0}} -i\frac{2\pi}{V_{0}} -i\frac{3\pi}{V_{0}} -i\frac{4\pi}{V_{0}} + C_{9}e^{-i\frac{4\pi}{V_{0}}} + C_{9}e^{-i\frac{4\pi}{V_{0}}} + C_{10}e^{-i\frac{5\pi}{V_{0}}} .$$
(16e)

It will be sufficient to carry out the calculation only for n = 10; results for n = 2, 4, 6, and 8 can be obtained from the n = 10 results by setting appropriate  $C_i$  equal to zero and renumbering the remaining  $C_i$ .

The calculation proceeds similarly as for n odd. We first stipulate that K(v) be real. This requires that the  $C_i$  of (16e) satisfy  $C_0 = C_{10}^*$ ,  $C_1 = C_9^*$ ,  $C_2 = C_8^*$ ,  $C_3 = C_7^*$ ,  $C_4 = C_6^*$ , and that  $C_5$  be real. Again the substitution  $v = V\cos \omega_m t$  is made, and standard expansions for  $\cos(k\cos\theta)$  and  $\sin(k\cos\theta)$  employed. The final result for n = 10 is

$$I_{out}/k = A_5 + 2 \left[ A_0 J_0 \left( \frac{5 \pi V}{V_0} \right) + A_1 J_0 \left( \frac{4 \pi V}{V_0} \right) + A_2 J_0 \left( \frac{3 \pi V}{V_0} \right) \right]$$
$$+ A_3 J_0 \left( \frac{2 \pi V}{V_0} \right) + A_4 J_0 \left( \frac{\pi V}{V_0} \right) \right]$$

$$-4\left[B_{0}J_{1}\left(\frac{5\pi V}{V_{0}}\right)+B_{1}J_{1}\left(\frac{4\pi V}{V_{0}}\right)+B_{2}J_{1}\left(\frac{3\pi V}{V_{0}}\right)+B_{3}J_{1}\left(\frac{2\pi V}{V_{0}}\right)\right)\right]$$
$$+B_{4}J_{1}\left(\frac{\pi V}{V_{0}}\right)\right]\cos\omega_{m}t$$
$$-4\left[A_{0}J_{2}\left(\frac{5\pi V}{V_{0}}\right)+A_{1}J_{2}\left(\frac{4\pi V}{V_{0}}\right)+A_{2}J_{2}\left(\frac{3\pi V}{V_{0}}\right)+A_{3}J_{2}\left(\frac{2\pi V}{V_{0}}\right)\right)\right]$$
$$+A_{4}J_{2}\left(\frac{\pi V}{V_{0}}\right)\right]\cos 2\omega_{m}t$$
$$+4\left[B_{0}J_{3}\left(\frac{5\pi V}{V_{0}}\right)+B_{1}J_{3}\left(\frac{4\pi V}{V_{0}}\right)+B_{2}J_{3}\left(\frac{3\pi V}{V_{0}}\right)+B_{3}J_{3}\left(\frac{2\pi V}{V_{0}}\right)\right)\right]$$
$$+B_{4}J_{3}\left(\frac{\pi V}{V_{0}}\right)\right]\cos 3\omega_{m}t$$

+ higher order harmonics.

(17)

### C. Fourier Approximation to Ideal Characteristic

We are now ready to find approximations to the ideal characteristic of Fig. 5 which can be written in the form of Eq. (3). One obvious choice is to use the Fourier approximation to determine the  $C_i$  of Eq. (3). Since the K(v) given by (10) and (16) are periodic, the ideal characteristic must also be periodic.

The symmetry of the ideal characteristic must be different for the cases of n odd and n even. For n odd, we will choose the ideal characteristic over one period to be that shown in Fig. 6a. This characteristic is, of course, only one of an infinite number of possibilities, and no claim is made that it is in any way optimum. It was chosen because it does not have any discontinuities and one might therefore hope that its Fourier series converges rapidly. For n even, the ideal characteristic of Fig. 6b will be used. It is identical to the characteristic of Fig. 6a over the region  $-0.5 < v/V_0 < 1.5$ , but differs over the remainder of its period.









ł

1. n odd

The complex Fourier series was calculated for the ideal characteristic of Fig. 6a. The expression for K(v) for each value of n was found by truncating the series after an appropriate number of terms. Each truncated series was then normalized to have a maximum magnitude of unity. The resulting K(v) are

$$i\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_{0}} - i\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_{0}} + 0.353553(1+i)e , \qquad (18a)$$

$$i \frac{3\pi}{2} \frac{v}{V_0} + 0.318198(1-i)e + 0.318198(1-i)e + 0.318198(1+i)e$$

$$-0.0353553(1-i) e^{-i\frac{3\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_0}},$$
 (18b)

$$i \frac{5\pi}{2} \frac{v}{V_0} = -0.0122856(1-i)e = -0.0341268(1+i)e + 0.307141(1-i)e$$

$$-i\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_{0}} - 0.0341268(1-i)e^{-i\frac{3\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_{0}}}$$

$$-i\frac{5\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_0},$$
(18c)

$$i \frac{7\pi}{2} \frac{v}{V_0}$$
 i  $\frac{5\pi}{2} \frac{v}{V_0}$   
n = 7 K(v) = 0.0061589(1+i)e - 0.0120716(1-i)e

$$i\frac{3\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_{0}} + 0.301791(1-i)e + 0.301791(1-i)e + 0.301791(1-i)e$$

 $-i\frac{3\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_0} - 0.0335323(1-i)e^{-i\frac{3\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_0}} - 0.0120716(1+i)e^{-i\frac{5\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_0}} + 0.0061589(1-i)e^{-i\frac{7\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_0}}$ 

(18d)

$$n = 9 K(v) = 0.003687(1-i)e + 0.006094(1+i)e - 0.011945(1-i)e i \frac{5\pi}{2} \frac{v}{V_0}$$

$$i\frac{3\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_{0}} + 0.298643(1-i)e + 0.298643(1-i)e + 0.298643(1+i)e + 0.298643(1+i)e$$

Y. "

$$-i\frac{3\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_{0}} - 0.033182(1-i)e^{-i\frac{3\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_{0}}} - 0.011945(1+i)e^{-i\frac{5\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_{0}}} + 0.006094(1-i)e^{-i\frac{7\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_{0}}}$$

$$+ 0.003687(1+i)e^{-i\frac{9\pi}{2}\frac{v}{V_0}}.$$
 (18e)

These K(v) are shown plotted in Fig. 7 over the portion of the characteristic which is of most interest,  $-0.5 < v/V_0 < +0.5$ . Solid curves are used for n = 1, 3, and 5, and dotted curves for n = 7 and 9. The ideal characteristic is shown dashed. These conventions will be used throughout. The curve n = 1 corresponds to the conventional amplitude modulator of Fig. 1.

As expected, the approximation to the ideal K(v) improves with increasing n. In general, for all n the approximation is better for  $-0.5 < v/V_0 < 0$  than for  $0 < v/V_0 < +0.5$ . This might have been expected since there is a discontinuity in the slope of K(v) at  $v/V_0 = +0.5$ , while there is none at  $v/V_0 = -0.5$ .

Of primary interest, however, is not how well the K(v) of Eqs. (18) approximate the ideal K(v), but rather how well the criteria established in Section IIIA are satisfied. To determine this for n = 9, we substitute the  $A_i$  and  $B_i$  of (18e) into Eq. (15). For the other values of n, the  $A_i$  and  $B_i$  are substituted into the appropriate equations derived from Eq. (15). This gives the information desired on the fundamental and harmonic amplitudes present in the demodulated signal.

The results are plotted in Fig. 8 where (a) the dc component, (b) the fundamental amplitude, (c) the second-harmonic magnitude, (d) the third harmonic magnitude, and (e) the deviation from linearity of the fundamental are shown as a function of  $V/V_0$ .



Graphs (a), (b), (c), and (d) are found from the appropriate terms of Eq. (15). The deviation from linearity of the fundamental is calculated in the following way. The slope of each curve of Fig. 8b is calculated at the origin. A straight line is then constructed for each curve by extrapolating this small-signal slope. The difference between each amplitude curve and its extrapolated straight line is termed the deviation from linearity. In Fig. 8e we plot the magnitude of this deviation.

The following results are seen from Fig. 8. The fundamental amplitude is approximately linear with  $V/V_0$  for all values of n. Hence from Fig. 8b alone, it is difficult to compare modulator performance on the basis of linearity of fundamental. The deviation from linearity curves of Fig. 8e, however, give a clear comparison for various n. From Fig. 8e we see that in all cases, deviation from linearity increases with increasing depth of modulation, although not necessarily in a monotonic fashion. Furthermore, we see that while the deviation from linearity for n = 5 and 9 is less than for n = 1, it is greater for n = 3 and 7. Hence we conclude that with respect to deviation from linearity of the fundamental, systematic improvement is not obtained as one uses more stages.

The second harmonic magnitudes are shown in Fig. 8c. Here a fairly uniform improvement with increasing n is obtained. For example the second harmonic amplitude for n = 7 is less than that for n = 1 by an order of magnitude for all values of  $V/V_0$ .

The third harmonic magnitudes are plotted in Fig. 8d. The curves for the third harmonic magnitude are very similar in form to those of Fig. 8e which show deviation from linearity of the fundamental. The magnitude of the third harmonic is reduced for n = 5 and 9, but is greater for n = 3 and 7.

From the above results, we conclude that the technique of determining K(v) by finding the complex Fourier series of the ideal characteristic of Fig. 6a did not prove to be satisfactory. While improvement was noted over conventional modulator performance for some values of n, poorer performance was obtained for others. One difficulty with this approach lies in the following. The  $C_i$  were chosen to approximate a certain voltage

C-26



Figure 8a



Ļ





Figure 8c C-29



1. -

Figure 8d



transfer function. Our ultimate concern, however, is not with how well this transfer function is approximated, but rather with modulator performance as measured by the amplitudes of the fundamental and harmonics present in the demodulated signal. Thus it is more desirable to choose the  $C_i$  by some technique which directly optimizes the modulator properties of interest. In the following section, this approach is employed to determine the  $C_i$  of the modulator transfer function.

# 2. n even

Since the Fourier approximation technique did not prove satisfactory for n odd, the equivalent calculation for n even was not performed.

D. Maximally-linear Approximation to Ideal Characteristic

 $\mathbf{1}$ . n odd

Equation (15) gives the dc, fundamental, second harmonic, and third harmonic components present in the demodulated output for n = 9. This is a general expression which is valid for any choice of  $C_i$ . Consider now the portion of Eq. (15) which gives the amplitude of the fundamental.

amplitude of  
fundamental = -4 
$$\left[ B_0 J_1 \left( \frac{9 \pi V}{2 V_0} \right) + B_1 J_1 \left( \frac{7 \pi V}{2 V_0} \right) + B_2 J_1 \left( \frac{5 \pi V}{2 V_0} \right) + B_3 J_1 \left( \frac{3 \pi V}{2 V_0} \right) \right]$$
  
+  $B_4 J_1 \left( \frac{\pi V}{2 V_0} \right) \right]$ 
(19)

If we write each Bessel function of (19) in series form, we obtain

Since ideally the amplitude of the fundamental is directly proportional to  $V/V_0$ , the  $V/V_0$ m of (20) is the desired portion of the output while the  $(V/V_0)^3$ ,  $(V/V_0)^5$ ,  $(V/V_0)^7$ , etc. terms represent distortion. Hence we will choose the B<sub>i</sub> so as to eliminate as many of these distortion terms as possible.

In order to make the coefficient of the  $(V/V_0)^3$  term be zero, the B<sub>i</sub> must satisfy

$$B_4 + 3^3 B_3 + 5^3 B_2 + 7^3 B_1 + 9^3 B_0 = 0.$$
 (21a)

Similarly, if the B<sub>i</sub> satisfy

$$B_4 + 3^5 B_3 + 5^5 B_2 + 7^5 B_1 + 9^5 B_0 = 0,$$
 (21b)

the coefficient of the  $(V/V_0)^5$  term will be zero. And finally if the coefficients of the  $(V/V_0)^7$  and  $(V/V_0)^9$  terms are to be zero, the B<sub>i</sub> must satisfy

$$B_4 + 3^7 B_3 + 5^7 B_2 + 7^7 B_1 + 9^7 B_0 = 0,$$
 (21c)

and

$$B_4 + 3^9 B_3 + 5^9 B_2 + 7^9 B_1 + 9^9 B_0 = 0.$$
 (21d)

Since we are free to choose five  $B_i$  ( $B_0$ ,  $B_1$ ,  $B_2$ ,  $B_3$ , and  $B_4$ ), we are able to make four coefficients of (20) become zero. The first remaining nonzero distortion term is  $(V/V_0)^{11}$ , and hence we call this method of determining the  $B_i$  a maximally-linear approximation.

In Eqs. (21a), (21b), (21c), and (21d) we have four simultaneous linear equations. Solving them, we obtain

$$B_{3} = -2/27 \quad B_{4},$$

$$B_{2} = 2/175 \quad B_{4},$$

$$B_{1} = -1/686 \quad B_{4},$$

$$B_{0} = 1/10,206 \quad B_{4}.$$

$$n = 9$$
(22)
The results we have just derived are for the case n = 9. For the case n = 7, K(v) is given by (10d) and an expression similar to Eq. (20) can be derived for the amplitude of the fundamental. Since one less B coefficient is available, we are able to force one less distortion term to zero. For n = 7, the equations obtained by requiring that the coefficients of the  $(V/V_0)^3$ ,  $(V/V_0)^5$ , and  $(V/V_0)^7$  terms be zero are

$$B_3 + 3^3 B_2 + 5^3 B_1 + 7^3 B_0 = 0,$$
 (23a)

$$B_3 + 3^5 B_2 + 5^5 B_1 + 7^5 B_0 = 0,$$
 (23b)

$$B_3 + 3^7 B_2 + 5^7 B_1 + 7^7 B_0 = 0.$$
 (23c)

The solutions for the B<sub>i</sub> are

$$B_{2} = -1/15 \quad B_{3},$$
  

$$B_{1} = 1/125 \quad B_{3},$$
  

$$B_{0} = -1/1715 \quad B_{3}.$$
  

$$n = 7$$
(24)

Correspondingly, for n = 5 we are able to make  $(V/V_0)^3$  and  $(V/V_0)^5$  terms be zero, while for n = 3 we can make only the  $(V/V_0)^3$  term be zero. The solutions for the  $B_i$  for these last two cases are

$$B_{1} = -1/18 \quad B_{2},$$
  

$$B_{0} = 1/250 \quad B_{2},$$
  

$$n = 5 \qquad (25)$$

and

$$B_0 = -1/27 \quad B_1.$$
  $n = 3$  (26)

We have thus determined relative values for the  $B_i$  for n = 3, 5, 7, and 9 by eliminating as many higher-order terms as possible from the series expansion of the amplitude of the fundamental. Since the  $A_i$  are not present in the expression for the fundamental, they remain to be determined. The  $A_i$  are present in expressions for the dc, second harmonic, fourth harmonic, etc. components of the output (see Eq. (15)), and hence can be chosen to optimize one of these. Our choice will be to pick the  $A_i$  to minimize the amplitude of the second harmonic.

We again return to the expression of Eq. (15) for n = 9. From (15), the amplitude of the second harmonic is seen to be

second harmonic  
amplitude = - 4 
$$\left[ A_0 J_2 \left( \frac{9 \pi V}{2 V_0} \right) + A_1 J_2 \left( \frac{7 \pi V}{2 V_0} \right) + A_2 J_2 \left( \frac{5 \pi V}{2 V_0} \right) + A_3 J_2 \left( \frac{3 \pi V}{2 V_0} \right) + A_4 J_2 \left( \frac{\pi V}{2 V_0} \right) \right]$$
. (27)

If we rewrite each Bessel function in series form, (27) becomes

>

,

second harmonic  
amplitude = -4 
$$\left[ \frac{\pi^2}{32} \left( \frac{V}{V_0} \right)^2 \left( A_4 + 3^2 A_3 + 5^2 A_2 + 7^2 A_1 + 9^2 A_0 \right) - \frac{\pi^4}{1536} \left( \frac{V}{V_0} \right)^4 \left( A_4 + 3^4 A_3 + 5^4 A_2 + 7^4 A_1 + 9^4 A_0 \right) - \frac{\pi^6}{196,608} \left( \frac{V}{V_0} \right)^6 \left( A_4 + 3^6 A_3 + 5^6 A_2 + 7^6 A_1 + 9^6 A_0 \right) - \frac{\pi^8}{47,185,920} \left( \frac{V}{V_0} \right)^8 \left( A_4 + 3^8 A_3 + 5^8 A_2 + 7^8 A_1 + 9^8 A_0 \right) + \dots \right]$$
(28)

We can make the  $(V/V_0)^2$ ,  $(V/V_0)^4$ ,  $(V/V_0)^6$ , and  $(V/V_0)^8$  terms go to zero by requiring that

$$A_4 + 3^2 A_3 + 5^2 A_2 + 7^2 A_1 + 9^2 A_0 = 0,$$
 (29a)

$$A_4 + 3^4 A_3 + 5^4 A_2 + 7^4 A_1 + 9^4 A_0 = 0,$$
 (29b)

$$A_4 + 3^6 A_3 + 5^6 A_2 + 7^6 A_1 + 9^6 A_0 = 0,$$
 (29c)

$$A_4 + 3^8 A_3 + 5^8 A_2 + 7^8 A_1 + 9^8 A_0 = 0.$$
 (29d)

Solving these four simultaneous linear equations, we obtain

$$A_{3} = -2/9 \qquad A_{4},$$

$$A_{2} = 2/35 \qquad A_{4},$$

$$A_{1} = -1/98 \qquad A_{4},$$

$$A_{0} = 1/1134 \qquad A_{4}.$$

$$n = 9 \qquad (30)$$

1.0 \$

Proceeding as before, we find for n = 3, 5, and 7 that

<sup>A</sup> 2	=	- 1	/5	A.3,				
A <sub>1</sub>	-	1	/25	А <sub>3</sub> ,				
A <sub>0</sub>	=	- 1	/245	А <sub>3</sub> .	n	=	7 (	31)

$$A_1 = -1/6 \quad A_2,$$
  
 $A_0 = 1/50 \quad A_2.$   $n = 5$  (32)

$$A_0 = -1/9 \qquad A_1.$$
  $n = 3$  (33)

Two additional constraints must now be applied in order to obtain absolute values for the  $A_i$  and  $B_i$ . Consider the n = 9 case again. We have obtained values for the  $B_i$  in terms of  $B_4$ , and values for the  $A_i$  in terms of  $A_4$ . So far, however, the size of  $B_4$ relative to  $A_4$  has not been determined. In order to make this choice, we observe the following. All calculations performed thus far have assumed that the depth of modulation never exceeds 100%. That is, we have assumed that a value of v is never reached for which K(v) is negative. This means, for example, that for the ideal characteristic of Fig. 5,  $v/V_0$  is never less than -1/2. Thus we would hope that the K(v) which we obtain for the maximally-linear case would be roughly comparable to the characteristic of Fig. 5. We would like for K(v=0) to be

C-36

approximately 0.5, and we would further hope that K(v) would be unity and zero for approximately equal positive and negative values of  $v_{\cdot}$ . By setting  $B_{l_{\mu}} = -A_{l_{\mu}}$ , we attempt to force this behavior. For from (10e) we recall that  $B_4$  and  $A_4$  are the

amplitudes of the e and e terms in K(v), and hence the above choice gives

$$\begin{array}{cccc} i \frac{\pi \ v}{2 \ V_0} & & -i \frac{\pi \ v}{2 \ V_0} \\ C_4 e & & + \ C_4 e & & = 2A_4 \ \cos \left( \frac{\pi \ v}{2 \ V_0} - \frac{\pi}{2} \right) \,. \end{array}$$

Thus the first Fourier component of K(v) is a cosine curve which is maximum at  $v/V_0 = 1/2$ and zero at  $v/V_0 = -1/2$ . To summarize then, by making  $B_4 = -A_4$  we attempt to make the general shape of K(v) comparable to that of the ideal K(v) of Fig. 6a. The detailed shape will be determined by the other  $A_i$  and  $B_i$  given in Eqs. (22) and (30).

We now have for the n = 9 case,

$$K(\mathbf{v}) = A_{4} \begin{bmatrix} \left(\frac{1}{1134} - \frac{i}{10,206}\right)^{\mathbf{i}} e^{\mathbf{i}\frac{9\pi\mathbf{v}}{2\mathbf{V}_{0}}} - \left(\frac{1}{98} - \frac{i}{686}\right)^{\mathbf{i}} e^{\mathbf{i}\frac{7\pi\mathbf{v}}{2\mathbf{V}_{0}}} \\ + \left(\frac{2}{35} - \frac{2\mathbf{i}}{175}\right)^{\mathbf{i}} e^{\mathbf{i}\frac{5\pi\mathbf{v}}{2\mathbf{V}_{0}}} - \left(\frac{2}{9} - \frac{2\mathbf{i}}{27}\right)^{\mathbf{i}} e^{\mathbf{i}\frac{3\pi\mathbf{v}}{2\mathbf{V}_{0}}} \\ + \left(1 - \mathbf{i}\right)^{\mathbf{i}} e^{\mathbf{i}\frac{\pi\mathbf{v}}{2\mathbf{V}_{0}}} + \left(1 + \mathbf{i}\right)^{\mathbf{i}} e^{-\mathbf{i}\frac{\pi\mathbf{v}}{2\mathbf{V}_{0}}} - \left(\frac{2}{9} + \frac{2\mathbf{i}}{27}\right)^{\mathbf{i}} e^{-\mathbf{i}\frac{3\pi\mathbf{v}}{2\mathbf{V}_{0}}} \\ + \left(\frac{2}{35} + \frac{2\mathbf{i}}{175}\right)^{\mathbf{i}} e^{-\mathbf{i}\frac{5\pi\mathbf{v}}{2\mathbf{V}_{0}}} - \left(\frac{1}{98} + \frac{\mathbf{i}}{686}\right)^{\mathbf{i}} e^{-\mathbf{i}\frac{\pi\mathbf{v}}{2\mathbf{V}_{0}}} \\ + \left(\frac{1}{1134} + \frac{\mathbf{i}}{10,206}\right)^{\mathbf{i}} e^{-\mathbf{i}\frac{9\pi\mathbf{v}}{2\mathbf{V}_{0}}}.$$
(34)

Our final task is to choose  $A_4$  so that the maximum magnitude of (34) is unity. Doing this we obtain

Ç\* 9

$$n = 9 K(v) = (0.000274 - i0.000030)e^{-i\frac{9\pi v}{2V_0}} - (0.003179 - i0.000454)e^{-i\frac{7\pi v}{2V_0}} + (0.017806 - i0.003561)e^{-i\frac{5\pi v}{2V_0}} - (0.069248 - i0.023082)e^{-i\frac{3\pi v}{2V_0}} + (0.311616 - i0.311616)e^{-i\frac{\pi v}{2V_0}} + (0.311616 + i0.311616)e^{-i\frac{\pi v}{2V_0}} + (0.017806 + i0.003561)e^{-i\frac{5\pi v}{2V_0}} + (0.017806 + i0.003561)e^{-i\frac{9\pi v}{2V_0}} + (0.003179 + i0.000454)e^{-i\frac{7\pi v}{2V_0}} + (0.00274 + i0.00030)e^{-i\frac{9\pi v}{2V_0}}.$$
(35a)

The final K(v) for n = 1, 3, 5, and 7 are similarly found to be

$$n = 7 \qquad K(v) = - (0.001294 - i0.000184)e^{-i\frac{7\pi v}{2V_0}} + (0.012683 - i0.002536)e^{-i\frac{5\pi v}{2V_0}} + (0.012683 - i0.002536)e^{-i\frac{\pi v}{2V_0}} + (0.012683 - i0.002536)e^{-i\frac{\pi v}{2V_0}} + (0.012683 + i0.0021138)e^{-i\frac{\pi v}{2V_0}} - (0.063414 + i0.021138)e^{-i\frac{3\pi v}{2V_0}} + (0.012683 + i0.002536)e^{-i\frac{5\pi v}{2V_0}} - (0.001294 + i0.000184)e^{-i\frac{7\pi v}{2V_0}}$$

(35b)

$$n = 5 \qquad K(\mathbf{v}) = (0.006489 - i0.001297)e^{-i\frac{5\pi v}{2V_0}} - (0.054077 - i0.018025)e^{-i\frac{3\pi v}{2V_0}} + (0.324465 - i0.324465)e^{-i\frac{\pi v}{2V_0}} + (0.324465 + i0.324465)e^{-i\frac{\pi v}{2V_0}} - (0.054077 + i0.018025)e^{-i\frac{3\pi v}{2V_0}} + (0.006489 + i0.001297)e^{-i\frac{5\pi v}{2V_0}}.$$
(35c)

n = 3 K(v) = - (0.037258 - i0.012419)e 
$$i \frac{3\pi v}{2V_0} + (0.335330 - i0.335330)e^{-i\frac{\pi v}{2V_0}} + (0.335330 + i0.335330)e^{-i\frac{\pi v}{2V_0}} - (0.037258 + i0.012419)e^{-i\frac{3\pi v}{2V_0}}.$$
  
(35d)

n = 1 K(v) = 
$$(0.353553 - i0.353553)e^{i\frac{\pi}{2V_0}} + (0.353553 + i0.353553)e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2V_0}}$$
.

(35e)

We can now substitute the  $A_i$  and  $B_i$  of Eqs. (35) into Eq. (15) [or, in the cases of n = 1, 3, 5, and 7, into the appropriate expressions derived from (15)] to assess the modulator performance obtained using the maximally-linear approximation. The results are shown in Fig. 9 where (a) the dc component, (b) the first harmonic amplitude, (c) the second harmonic magnitude, (d) the 3rd harmonic magnitude, and (e) the deviation from linearity of the fundamental are plotted as a function of  $V/V_0$ . The case n = 1 again corresponds to a conventional amplitude modulator. Results for n even are also shown on Fig. 9, but for the present we will limit our remarks to the case of n odd.

Figures 9c, 9c', and 9e show that a substantial, uniform reduction in distortion occurs for increasing values of n. These results must be interpreted with care, however, for Fig. 9b shows that there is also a reduction in the amplitude of the fundamental. Hence as n increases, the reduction in distortion is accompanied by a reduction in the desired output.

C-39



و ن

DC COMPONENT





MAGNITUDE OF 2ND HARMONIC

1.3



MAGNITUDE OF 3RD HARMONIC



DEVIATION FROM LINEARITY OF THE FUNDAMENTAL

A clearer picture of these results is given in Fig. 10 where (a) the deviation from linearity of the fundamental, and (b) the magnitude of the second harmonic are plotted vs. n for certain fixed values of the amplitude of the fundamental. Curves are given for fundamental amplitudes of 0.475 (which corresponds to a degree of modulation of roughly 90%), 0.4 (approximately 70%), 0.3 (approximately 50%), 0.2 (approximately 30%), and 0.1 (approximately 15%). Points representing odd values of n are connected by solid lines while points for even values of n are connected by dotted lines. Since the behavior of the third harmonic's magnitude was very similar to Fig. 10a, a separate graph was not plotted for it.

Figure 10a shows how distortion in the fundamental varies with n. It is seen that in going from a conventional modulator to a three stage modulator, the fundamental distortion does not improve, and in fact, becomes slightly worse. For n = 5, some improvement is noted while for n = 7 and 9, significant improvement is obtained. Similar results are obtained for the second harmonic magnitude.

We therefore conclude that for n odd, the maximally-linear approximation technique is only partially successful. For small values of n ( $n \le 5$ ), relatively little improvement is obtained while for larger values of n ( $n \ge 7$ ), substantial improvement occurs. Thus the improvement increases with increasing values of n.

It is of some interest to know what a plot of K(v) looks like for the maximally-linear case. Figure 11 shows the K(v) of Eqs. (35) plotted as a function of  $v/V_0$ . We see that the K(v) are closely approaching a straight line with increasing n. Note that the slopes of the curves of Fig. 11 decrease somewhat with increasing n; this causes the slight decrease in the amplitude of the fundamental which was mentioned in the previous paragraph. It should also be noted that the value of  $v/V_0$  at which K(v) becomes zero is slightly different for different values of n. The maximum voltage, therefore, which can be applied becomes somewhat greater as n is increased. In Fig. 9, the curves are plotted up to this maximum permissible voltage.







MAGNITUDE OF 2ND HARMONIC

Figure 10b



Figure 11

The modulator designs which correspond to the K(v) derived by using the maximallylinear technique are tabulated in Table I. These designs were found by applying the synthesis procedure of Section II to the K(v) of Eqs. (35). The quantities listed in Table I are the rotation angle  $(\theta_i)$  of each electro-optic cell, the retardation  $(b_i)$  introduced by each optical compensator, and the rotation angle  $(\theta_p)$  of the output polarizer. 2. n even

An equivalent calculation can be carried out for modulators having an even number of stages. Although this calculation is similar in many respects to that just described for n odd, it is different in at least one important aspect – namely, modulators can be designed which produce no even harmonics in the demodulated output.

Let us restrict our attention to the n = 10 case. Equation (17) gives the demodulated output leaving the envelope detector for n = 10. The amplitude of the fundamental is given by

amplitude of  
fundamental = - 4 
$$\left[ B_0 J_1 \left( \frac{5 \pi V}{V_0} \right) + B_1 J_1 \left( \frac{4 \pi V}{V_0} \right) + B_2 J_1 \left( \frac{3 \pi V}{V_0} \right) \right]$$
  
+  $B_3 J_1 \left( \frac{2 \pi V}{V_0} \right) + B_4 J_1 \left( \frac{\pi V}{V_0} \right) \right].$  (36)

Writing each Bessel function in series form, we obtain

	n=1	n=2	n=3	n=4	G=n	n=6	/u	n=8	n=9	n=10
θ1	45°00'	19°40'	4°461	2°271	0°451	0°321	₁ <b>20</b> ₀0	0°061	10°0	110°0
b <sub>1</sub> (rad)	1.57	4.71	3.68	3.21	3.38	3.25	3.25	3.23	3.22	3.18
$\theta_2$		39°19"	47°031	19°06†	6°56†	5°021	1°061	1°091	0°16'	∕ 0°13t
b <sub>2</sub> (rad)		1.57	4.56	4.64	3.60	3.24	3.31	3.24	3.24	3.19
θ <sub>3</sub>			47°031	38°511	44°581	23°571	5°51'	6°121	1°34'	10101
b <sub>3</sub> (rad)			0.54	4.64	4.50	4.50	3.57	3.22	3.30	3.19
$\theta_4$				19°061	44°58'	48°44'	34°29'	23°19'	6°231	:47.3
b <sub>4</sub> (rad)				0.07	3.60	4.50	4.58	4.45	3.55	3.17
θ5					6°56'	23°571	34°291	48°01'	33°46°	17°45'
b <sub>5</sub> (rad)					0.24	3.24	3.57	4.45	4.57	4.55
96						5°021	5°51'	23°19'	33°461	38°04°
b <sub>6</sub> (rad)						0.11	3.31	3.22	3.55	4.55
$\theta_T$							1°06'	6°12'	6°231	17°45'
$\mathbf{b}_{7}$ (rad)							0.11	3.24	3.30	3.17
<b>9</b> 8								1°091	1°34'	5°17'
b <sub>8</sub> (rad)								0.08	3.24	3.19
θ9									0°161	1°19'
b <sub>9</sub> (rad)									0.07	3.19

Table I

n≔10	0°13† 0.04	89°59†	1.57		
n=9		89°591	0.11		
n=8		89°54'	4.71		
7=n		89°531	3.28		
n=6		89°281	1.57		
g=u		89°15'	0.20		
n=4		87°331	4.71		
n=3		85°14'	3.46		
n=2		70°201	1.57		
n=1		-45°001	0		
	$\theta_{10}$ b <sub>10</sub> (rad)	9	b <sub>p</sub> (rad)		

Table I (Continued)

We can make the coefficients of the  $(V/V_0)^3$ ,  $(V/V_0)^5$ ,  $(V/V_0)^7$ , and  $(V/V_0)^9$  terms be zero by setting

$$B_4 + 2^3 B_3 + 3^3 B_2 + 4^3 B_1 + 5^3 B_0 = 0,$$
 (38a)

$$B_4 + 2^5 B_3 + 3^5 B_2 + 4^5 B_1 + 5^5 B_0 = 0,$$
 (38b)

$$B_4 + 2^7 B_3 + 3^7 B_2 + 4^7 B_1 + 5^7 B_0 = 0,$$
 (38c)

$$B_4 + 2^9 B_3 + 3^9 B_2 + 4^9 B_1 + 5^9 B_0 = 0.$$
 (38d)

Solving these four equations, we obtain

$$B_{3} = -2/7 \quad B_{4},$$

$$B_{2} = 1/14 \quad B_{4},$$

$$B_{1} = -1/84 \quad B_{4},$$

$$B_{0} = 1/1050 \quad B_{4}.$$

$$n = 10$$
(39)

Similar calculations can be carried out for n = 2, 4, 6, and 8. For these cases, we obtain

$$B_{2} = -\frac{1}{4} \quad B_{3},$$
  

$$B_{1} = \frac{1}{21} \quad B_{3},$$
  

$$B_{0} = -\frac{1}{224} \quad B_{3}.$$
  

$$n = 8$$
(40)

$$B_1 = -1/5 \quad B_2,$$
  
 $B_0 = 1/45 \quad B_2.$   $n = 6$  (41)

and

$$B_0 = -1/8 \quad B_1.$$
  $n = 4$  (42)

It is interesting to note that as far as the  $B_i$  are concerned, the n = 10 case is very similar to the n = 9 case. In both cases, we make the  $(V/V_0)^3$ ,  $(V/V_0)^5$ ,  $(V/V_0)^7$ , and  $(V/V_0)^9$  terms be zero by appropriately choosing  $B_0$ ,  $B_1$ , and  $B_2$ . As we are about to see, however, the two cases are quite different as far as the  $A_i$  are concerned.

For n = 10, we will set all  $A_i$  except  $A_5$  equal to zero. As seen from Eq. (17) this will automatically make the amplitude of the second harmonic (and all other even harmonics) zero. It is important to note that we are able to do this and still have K(v) assume the general form of the ideal function of Fig. 6b. The ideal function of Fig. 6b may be thought of as consisting of a constant term of 0.5 plus a triangular wave of odd symmetry. Hence, the  $A_i$  are not required (except for  $A_5$ ) and the ideal K(v) can be approximated by a K(v) consisting of a constant term plus sine terms. This was not possible in the case of the ideal function of Fig. 6a since both cosine and sine terms are needed to approximate it.

To conclude our determination of the K(v) for n even, it is necessary only to set the constant term  $C_{n/2}$  equal to 0.5 and to normalize the  $B_i$  so that K(v) has a maximum value of +1. Doing this, we obtain

n = 10   
K(v) = -i0.0002159 e   

$$i \frac{5\pi v}{V_0}$$
 + i0.0026996 e   
 $i \frac{4\pi v}{V_0}$  - i0.0161975 e   
 $i \frac{3\pi v}{V_0}$  + i0.0161975 e   
 $i \frac{2\pi v}{V_0}$  - i0.2267650 e   
 $i \frac{\pi v}{V_0}$  + 0.5 + i0.2267650 e   
 $-i \frac{\pi v}{V_0}$  - i0.0647900 e   
 $-i \frac{2\pi v}{V_0}$  + i0.0161975 e   
 $-i \frac{3\pi v}{V_0}$  + i0.0161975 e   
 $-i \frac{4\pi v}{V_0}$  + i0.0002159 e   
 $-i \frac{5\pi v}{V_0}$ , (43a)

n = 8  
K(v) = i0.0010318 e 
$$i\frac{4\pi v}{V_0}$$
 - i0.0110064 e  $i\frac{3\pi v}{V_0}$  + i0.0577835 e  $i\frac{2\pi v}{V_0}$   
- i0.2311339 e  $i\frac{\pi v}{V_0}$  + 0.5 + i0.2311339 e  $-i\frac{\pi v}{V_0}$   
- i0.0577835 e  $-i\frac{2\pi v}{V_0}$  + i0.0110064 e  $-i\frac{3\pi v}{V_0}$  - i0.0010318 e  $-i\frac{4\pi v}{V_0}$ , (43b)

n = 6   
K(v) = - i0.0052498 e   

$$i \frac{3\pi v}{V_0} + i0.0472481 e$$
   
 $i \frac{2\pi v}{V_0} - i0.2362406 e$    
 $i \frac{\pi v}{V_0}$    
 $+ 0.5 + i0.2362406 e^{-i\frac{\pi v}{V_0}} - i0.0472481 e^{-i\frac{2\pi v}{V_0}}$    
 $+ i0.0052498 e^{-i\frac{3\pi v}{V_0}}, \qquad (43c)$    
 $i \frac{2\pi v}{V_0}$ 

n = 4 K(v) = i0.0303643 e 
$$-$$
 i0.2429150 e  $+$  0.5

$$+ i0.2429150 e^{-i\frac{\pi v}{V_0}} - i0.0303643 e^{-i\frac{2\pi v}{V_0}}, \qquad (43d)$$

n = 2 K(v) = - i0.2500000 e 
$$i \frac{\pi v}{V_0} + 0.5 + i0.2500000 e$$
. (43e)

Figure 12 shows these K(v) plotted as a function of  $v/V_0$ . Solid lines are used for n = 2, 4, and 6, dotted lines for <math>n = 8 and 10, and a dashed line for the ideal characteristic. The performance of the modulators corresponding to these K(v) is evaluated by substituting the  $A_i$  and  $B_i$  of (43a) into (17), and the  $A_i$  and  $B_i$  of (43b) - (43e) into the corresponding equations derived from (17). The results are shown in Fig. 9a through 9e.

Since all  $A_i$  except  $A_{n/2}$  were chosen to be zero, the dc component of the output is constant with a value of 0.5. For the same reason, the magnitude of the second harmonic is zero for all n even. The deviation from linearity of the fundamental and the magnitude of



Figure 12

the third harmonic, seen in Figs. 9d and 9e, again behave in very similar fashion to each other. These figures show that the maximally-linear approximation is, in general, less successful for n even than for n odd. For example, there is more fundamental and third harmonic distortion present for n = 10 than for n = 9 for all values of  $v/V_0$ . In some cases, the n even networks produce less distortion than the n odd networks for small values of  $v/V_0$ , but for larger values of  $v/V_0$  the n even networks are consistantly inferior in performance.

In order to obtain the entire picture, however, the variation of the fundamental amplitude with n must also be considered. This is shown in Fig. 9a, where it is seen that the fundamental amplitude does not fall off nearly as much with increasing n when n is even as when n is odd. However, as can be seen from Fig. 10a where fundamental distortion is plotted vs. n for constant values of the fundamental amplitude, the modulators having n even are still inferior to those with n odd.

To summarize then, the maximally-linear approximation technique is perhaps less successful for n even than for n odd. For n even, an advantage is obtained in that the excond, fourth, sixth, etc. harmonics are zero. If the elimination of even harmonics is of prime importance, the n even case may well be the solution. The distortion present in the odd harmonics of the output, however, is worse for n even than for n odd.

## IV. AMPLITUDE MODULATORS FOR USE WITH SQUARE-LAW DETECTORS

In this section we consider the ideal characteristic and methods for its approximation for an amplitude modulator to be used with a square-law detector. This case is probably of greater general interest than the envelope-detector case since various square-law detectors are available and widely used.

C-56

## A. Ideal Modulator Characteristic

In Section III it was seen that for the envelope-detector case, one possible ideal characteristic is

$$K(\mathbf{v}) = \left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{\mathbf{v}}{V_0}\right)$$

It is not difficult to see, then, that for the square-law case the corresponding ideal characteristic is

$$K(v) = \left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{v}{V_0}\right)^{1/2} .$$
(44)

To verify that the K(v) of (44) is indeed an ideal modulator transfer function, assume that an optical signal  $e^{i\omega t}$  enters a modulator having such a K(v). The signal  $E_{out}$  leaving the modulator is given by

$$E_{out} = \left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{v}{V_0}\right)^{1/2} e^{i\omega t}.$$
(45)

If we assume that the modulating signal v has the form v = V  $\cos \omega_{\rm m} t$ , Eq. (45) becomes

$$E_{out} = \left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{V}{V_0} \cos \omega_m t\right)^{1/2} e^{i \omega t}, \qquad (46)$$

the signal which is incident upon the detector. The detector output  $I_{out}$  is given by  $kE_{out}E_{out}^*$ , which using (46) gives

$$I_{out} = k \left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{V}{V_0} \cos \omega_m t\right).$$
(47)

As noted before, this satisfies perfectly the <u>oriteria</u> which we have selected for modulator performance, namely that the detector output contain a fundamental whose amplitude is linearly proportional to V, and no higher harmonics. The ideal characteristic of Eq. (44) is plotted in Fig. 13. Finally, it should be noted that just as there were an infinite number of possible ideal characteristics (of various slopes) for the envelope-detector case, there are likewise an infinite number of possibilities for the square-law case.



.

Figure 13

For the square-law case, we will consider only n odd. The previous section showed it to be more useful than n even in almost all respects. The sole exception was in elimination of even harmonics, where by proper choice of the  $A_i$ , a modulator with n even could be designed to produce no even harmonics. However as we will see, even this potential advantage is not present in the square-law case, since the even harmonic amplitudes are now functions of the  $A_i$  and  $B_i$  rather than the  $A_i$  alone.

B. Formulas for Amplitudes of Fundamental and Harmonics

We now derive general expressions for the amplitudes of the fundamental and harmonics present in the detector output. The voltage transfer functions for 1, 3, 5, 7, and 9 stage networks are again given by Eqs. (10). The details of the computation will be given for n = 9 only, since results for n = 1, 3, 5, and 7 are derivable from the n = 9 case.

We again impose the requirement that K(v) be real. This condition was necessary in the envelope-detector case to ensure that the phase of the demodulated fundamental did not depend upon V; it is not necessary, however, in the square-law case. Hence the decision to restrict K(v) to being real is admittedly an arbitrary one, made primarily for convenience. An additional incentive is provided, however, by the work of Ammann and Yarborough [28]. They have shown that if K(v) is real, a modification of the synthesis procedure of Part V can be used which results in a modulator containing only half as many stages as normally required.

With this restriction, K(v) for n = 9 becomes

$$K(\mathbf{v}) = C_{0}\mathbf{e}^{i\frac{9\pi\mathbf{v}}{2V_{0}}} + C_{1}\mathbf{e}^{i\frac{7\pi\mathbf{v}}{2V_{0}}} + C_{2}\mathbf{e}^{i\frac{5\pi\mathbf{v}}{2V_{0}}} + C_{3}\mathbf{e}^{i\frac{3\pi\mathbf{v}}{2V_{0}}} + C_{4}\mathbf{e}^{i\frac{\pi\mathbf{v}}{2V_{0}}} + C_{4}\mathbf{e}^{i\frac{$$

The square-law detector output is given by

$$I_{out} = k K(v) K^{*}(v) E_{in} E_{in}^{*},$$

which for the  $E_{in}$  of Eq. (7) gives

$$I_{out} = k K(v) K^{*}(v).$$
<sup>(49)</sup>

Substituting (48) into (49) gives

,

٢

$$\begin{split} I_{out}/k &= K(v) K^{*}(v) = 2 \left[ C_{0}C_{0}^{*} + C_{1}C_{1}^{*} + C_{2}C_{2}^{*} + C_{3}C_{3}^{*} + C_{4}C_{4}^{*} \right] \\ &+ e^{-i\frac{\pi v}{V_{0}}} \left[ 2(C_{0}C_{1}^{*} + C_{1}C_{2}^{*} + C_{2}C_{3}^{*} + C_{3}C_{4}^{*}) + C_{4}C_{4} \right] \\ &+ e^{-i\frac{\pi v}{V_{0}}} \left[ 2(C_{0}^{*}C_{1} + C_{1}^{*}C_{2} + C_{2}^{*}C_{3} + C_{3}^{*}C_{4}) + C_{4}^{*}C_{4}^{*} \right] \\ &+ e^{-i\frac{2\pi v}{V_{0}}} \left[ 2(C_{0}C_{2}^{*} + C_{1}C_{3}^{*} + C_{2}C_{4}^{*} + C_{3}C_{4}) \right] \\ &+ e^{-i\frac{2\pi v}{V_{0}}} \left[ 2(C_{0}^{*}C_{2} + C_{1}^{*}C_{3} + C_{2}^{*}C_{4} + C_{3}^{*}C_{4}) \right] \\ &+ e^{-i\frac{3\pi v}{V_{0}}} \left[ 2(C_{0}^{*}C_{3} + C_{1}C_{4}^{*} + C_{2}C_{4}) + C_{3}C_{3} \right] \\ &+ e^{-i\frac{3\pi v}{V_{0}}} \left[ 2(C_{0}^{*}C_{3} + C_{1}^{*}C_{4} + C_{2}^{*}C_{4}) + C_{3}^{*}C_{3}^{*} \right] \\ &+ e^{-i\frac{4\pi v}{V_{0}}} \left[ 2(C_{0}^{*}C_{3} + C_{1}C_{4}^{*} + C_{2}C_{4}) + C_{3}^{*}C_{3}^{*} \right] \end{split}$$

$$+ e^{-i\frac{4\pi v}{V_0}} \left[ 2(C_0^*C_4 + C_1^*C_4^* + C_2^*C_3^*) \right]$$

$$+ e^{-i\frac{5\pi v}{V_0}} \left[ 2(C_0C_4 + C_1C_3) + C_2C_2 \right]$$

$$+ e^{-i\frac{5\pi v}{V_0}} \left[ 2(C_0^*C_4^* + C_1^*C_3^*) + C_2^*C_2^* \right]$$

$$+ e^{-i\frac{6\pi v}{V_0}} \left[ 2(C_0C_3 + C_1C_2) \right] + e^{-i\frac{6\pi v}{V_0}} \left[ 2(C_0^*C_3^* + C_1^*C_2^*) \right]$$

$$+ e^{-i\frac{7\pi v}{V_0}} \left[ 2C_0C_2 + C_1C_1 \right] + e^{-i\frac{7\pi v}{V_0}} \left[ 2C_0^*C_2^* + C_1^*C_1^* \right]$$

$$+ e^{-i\frac{8\pi v}{V_0}} \left[ 2C_0C_1 \right] + e^{-i\frac{8\pi v}{V_0}} \left[ 2C_0^*C_1^* \right]$$

$$+ e^{-i\frac{9\pi v}{V_0}} \left[ C_0C_0 \right] + e^{-i\frac{9\pi v}{V_0}} \left[ C_0^*C_0^* \right] .$$
(50)

Letting  $C_1 = A_1 + iB_1$ , we obtain  $I_{out}/k = 2 \left[ A_0^2 + A_1^2 + A_2^2 + A_3^2 + A_4^2 + B_0^2 + B_1^2 + B_2^2 + B_3^2 + B_4^2 \right]$   $+ 2\cos \frac{\pi v}{V_0} \left[ A_4^2 - B_4^2 + 2(A_0A_1 + B_0B_1 + A_1A_2 + B_1B_2 + A_2A_3 + B_2B_3 + A_3A_4 + B_3B_4) \right]$   $- 2\sin \frac{\pi v}{V_0} \left[ 2(-A_0B_1 + A_1B_0 - A_1B_2 + A_2B_1 - A_2B_3 + A_3B_2 - A_3B_4 + A_4B_3 + A_4B_4) \right]$   $+ 2\cos \frac{2\pi v}{V_0} \left[ 2(A_0A_2 + B_0B_2 + A_1A_3 + B_1B_3 + A_2A_4 + B_2B_4 + A_3A_4 - B_3B_4) \right]$  $- 2\sin \frac{2\pi v}{V_0} \left[ 2(-A_0B_2 + A_2B_0 - A_1B_3 + A_3B_1 - A_2B_4 + A_4B_2 + A_3B_4 + A_4B_3) \right]$ 

$$+ 2\cos\frac{3\pi v}{V_{0}} \left[ A_{3}^{2} - B_{3}^{2} + 2(A_{0}A_{3} + B_{0}B_{3} + A_{1}A_{4} + B_{1}B_{4} + A_{2}A_{4} - B_{2}B_{4}) \right]$$

$$- 2\sin\frac{3\pi v}{V_{0}} \left[ 2(-A_{0}B_{3} + A_{3}B_{0} - A_{1}B_{4} + A_{4}B_{1} + A_{2}B_{4} + A_{4}B_{2} + A_{3}B_{3}) \right]$$

$$+ 2\cos\frac{4\pi v}{V_{0}} \left[ 2(A_{0}A_{4} + B_{0}B_{4} + A_{1}A_{4} - B_{1}B_{4} + A_{2}A_{3} - B_{2}B_{3}) \right]$$

$$- 2\sin\frac{4\pi v}{V_{0}} \left[ 2(-A_{0}B_{4} + A_{4}B_{0} + A_{1}B_{4} + B_{1}A_{4} + A_{2}B_{3} + A_{3}B_{2}) \right]$$

$$+ 2\cos\frac{5\pi v}{V_{0}} \left[ A_{2}^{2} - B_{2}^{2} + 2(A_{0}A_{4} - B_{0}B_{4} + A_{1}A_{3} - B_{1}B_{3}) \right]$$

$$- 2\sin\frac{5\pi v}{V_{0}} \left[ 2(A_{0}B_{4} + A_{4}B_{0} + A_{1}B_{3} + A_{3}B_{1} + A_{2}B_{2}) \right]$$

$$+ 2\cos\frac{6\pi v}{V_{0}} \left[ 2(A_{0}B_{4} + A_{4}B_{0} + A_{1}B_{3} + A_{3}B_{1} + A_{2}B_{2}) \right]$$

$$+ 2\cos\frac{6\pi v}{V_{0}} \left[ 2(A_{0}B_{3} + A_{3}B_{0} + A_{1}B_{2} + A_{2}B_{1}) \right]$$

$$+ 2\cos\frac{7\pi v}{V_{0}} \left[ A_{1}^{2} - B_{1}^{2} + 2(A_{0}A_{2} - B_{0}B_{2}) \right] - 2\sin\frac{7\pi v}{V_{0}} \left[ 2(A_{0}B_{2} + A_{2}B_{0} + A_{1}B_{1}) \right]$$

$$+ 2\cos\frac{8\pi v}{V_{0}} \left[ 2(A_{0}A_{1} - B_{0}B_{1}) \right] - 2\sin\frac{8\pi v}{V_{0}} \left[ 2(A_{0}B_{1} + A_{1}B_{0}) \right]$$

$$+ 2\cos\frac{9\pi v}{V_{0}} \left[ A_{0}^{2} - B_{0}^{2} \right] - 2\sin\frac{9\pi v}{V_{0}} \left[ 2A_{0}B_{0} \right]$$

$$(51)$$

For convenience we will designate the bracketed terms in (51) by  $\mathcal{Q}_0$ ,  $\mathcal{Q}_1$ ,  $\mathcal{B}_1$ ,  $\mathcal{Q}_2$ ,  $\mathcal{B}_2$ ,  $\mathcal{Q}_3$ ,  $\mathcal{B}_3$ ,  $\mathcal{Q}_4$ ,  $\mathcal{B}_4$ ,  $\mathcal{Q}_5$ ,  $\mathcal{B}_5$ ,  $\mathcal{Q}_6$ ,  $\mathcal{B}_6$ ,  $\mathcal{Q}_7$ ,  $\mathcal{A}_7$ ,  $\mathcal{Q}_8$ ,  $\mathcal{Q}_8$ ,  $\mathcal{Q}_9$ , and  $\mathcal{Q}_9$  respectively. Equation (51) then becomes

$$I_{out}/k = 2 \mathcal{A}_{0} + 2 \mathcal{A}_{1} \cos \frac{\pi v}{V_{0}} - 2 \frac{\pi v}{1} \sin \frac{\pi v}{V_{0}} + 2 \mathcal{A}_{2} \cos \frac{2 \pi v}{V_{0}}$$
$$- 2 \mathcal{A}_{2} \sin \frac{2 \pi v}{V_{0}} + 2 \mathcal{A}_{3} \cos \frac{3 \pi v}{V_{0}} - 2 \mathcal{A}_{3} \sin \frac{3 \pi v}{V_{0}} + 2 \mathcal{A}_{4} \cos \frac{4 \pi v}{V_{0}}$$

$$- 2 \mathcal{B}_{4} \sin \frac{4 \pi v}{V_{0}} + 2 \mathcal{Q}_{5} \cos \frac{5 \pi v}{V_{0}} - 2 \mathcal{B}_{5} \sin \frac{5 \pi v}{V_{0}} + 2 \mathcal{Q}_{6} \cos \frac{6 \pi v}{V_{0}}$$

$$- 2 \mathcal{B}_{6} \sin \frac{6 \pi v}{V_{0}} + 2 \mathcal{Q}_{7} \cos \frac{7 \pi v}{V_{0}} - 2 \mathcal{B}_{7} \sin \frac{7 \pi v}{V_{0}} + 2 \mathcal{Q}_{8} \cos \frac{8 \pi v}{V_{0}}$$

$$- 2 \mathcal{B}_{8} \sin \frac{8 \pi v}{V_{0}} + 2 \mathcal{Q}_{9} \cos \frac{9 \pi v}{V_{0}} - 2 \mathcal{B}_{9} \sin \frac{9 \pi v}{V_{0}} .$$
(52)

If we now let  $v = V \cos \omega_m t$  and expand the  $\cos(\cos \theta)$  and  $\sin(\cos \theta)$  terms which result, the desired expression is obtained for n = 9.

$$\begin{split} \mathbf{I}_{out}/\mathbf{k} &= 2 \left[ \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{0} + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{1}\mathbf{J}_{0} \left( \frac{\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{2}\mathbf{J}_{0} \left( \frac{2\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{3}\mathbf{J}_{0} \left( \frac{3\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{4}\mathbf{J}_{0} \left( \frac{4\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) \right. \\ &+ \left. \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{5}\mathbf{J}_{0} \left( \frac{5\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{6}\mathbf{J}_{0} \left( \frac{6\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{7}\mathbf{J}_{0} \left( \frac{7\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{3}\mathbf{J}_{0} \left( \frac{8\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{9}\mathbf{J}_{0} \left( \frac{9\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) \right] \right. \\ &- 4 \left[ \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{1}\mathbf{J}_{1} \left( \frac{\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{2}\mathbf{J}_{1} \left( \frac{2\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{3}\mathbf{J}_{1} \left( \frac{3\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{4}\mathbf{J}_{1} \left( \frac{4\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{5}\mathbf{J}_{1} \left( \frac{5\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) \right. \\ &+ \left. \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{6}\mathbf{J}_{1} \left( \frac{6\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{7}\mathbf{J}_{1} \left( \frac{7\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{8}\mathbf{J}_{1} \left( \frac{8\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{9}\mathbf{J}_{1} \left( \frac{9\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) \right] \cos \omega_{\mathrm{m}} t \\ &- 4 \left[ \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{1}\mathbf{J}_{2} \left( \frac{\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{2}\mathbf{J}_{2} \left( \frac{2\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{3}\mathbf{J}_{2} \left( \frac{3\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{4}\mathbf{J}_{2} \left( \frac{4\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) \right. \\ &+ \left. \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{6}\mathbf{J}_{2} \left( \frac{6\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{7}\mathbf{J}_{2} \left( \frac{2\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{3}\mathbf{J}_{2} \left( \frac{3\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{9}\mathbf{J}_{2} \left( \frac{9\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) \right] \cos \omega_{\mathrm{m}} t \\ &+ \left. \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{6}\mathbf{J}_{2} \left( \frac{6\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{7}\mathbf{J}_{2} \left( \frac{7\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{8}\mathbf{J}_{3} \left( \frac{3\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{9}\mathbf{J}_{3} \left( \frac{9\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) \right] \cos \omega_{\mathrm{m}} t \\ &+ \left. \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{6}\mathbf{J}_{3} \left( \frac{6\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{7}\mathbf{J}_{3} \left( \frac{7\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{8}\mathbf{J}_{3} \left( \frac{3\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{9}\mathbf{J}_{3} \left( \frac{9\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) \right] \cos \omega_{\mathrm{m}} t \\ &+ \left. \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{6}\mathbf{J}_{3} \left( \frac{6\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{7}\mathbf{J}_{3} \left( \frac{7\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{8}\mathbf{J}_{3} \left( \frac{3\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) + \mathbf{\mathcal{Q}}_{9}\mathbf{J}_{3} \left( \frac{9\pi \mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{V}_{0}} \right) \right] \cos \omega_{\mathrm{m}} t$$

From (53) we see that the amplitudes of the fundamental and harmonics are functions of both the  $A_i$  and  $B_i$ . This is in contrast to the envelope-detector case where even-harmonic amplitudes are functions of the  $A_i$  only, while odd harmonic amplitudes are functions of the  $B_i$ .

## C. Fourier Approximation to Ideal Characteristic

One might again consider using the Fourier approximation to determine the  $C_i$ . This calculation was carried out for the ideal characteristic of Fig. 14 and the resulting  $A_i$  and  $B_i$  substituted into Eq. (53) (or, for the cases of n = 1, 3, 5, and 7, into equivalent expressions) to assess the modulators' performance. This approximation method again proved unsuccessful in yielding modulators with improved performance characteristics, and hence the results will be briefly summarized instead of presented in detail. The deviation from linearity of the fundamental was found to be greater for n = 5 and 9 than for n = 1, while for n = 3 and 7 the deviation from linearity was only slightly less than for n = 1. In addition since for n = 1 there is no second harmonic, the conventional modulator's performance is superior in this respect also. Therefore the conclusion is again reached that the Fourier method is not successful in designing improved amplitude modulators.

As mentioned earlier, the problem is probably at least partially due to the abrupt changes of slope of K(v) which occur at  $v/V_0 = -0.5$  and +0.5. In an attempt to verify this, another approach was tried. Instead of approximating the ideal K(v) of Fig. 12, a new K(v) was chosen which closely follows the K(v) of Fig. 12 for  $-0.45 < v/V_0 < 0.45$ , but which deviates from it in such a fashion that abrupt slope changes are avoided in the vicinity of  $v/V_0 = \pm 0.5$ . Using graphical techniques, the Fourier coefficients for this new K(v) were found and substituted into Eq. (53).

This technique resulted in a systematic, but fairly small, reduction in the deviation from linearity of the fundamental for n = 1, 3, 5, and 7. For n = 9, however, the deviation returned to essentially its n = 1 value. The second harmonic magnitudes decreased only slightly with increasing n. Thus although this technique was more successful than the regular Fourier approximation of the K(v) of Fig. 12, it still leaves much to be desired. The improvements which it produces are not substantial enough, or sufficiently uniform with increasing n, to merit its use.



ı

## D. Maximally-linear Approximation to Ideal Characteristic

The approximation technique which proved most useful for the envelope-detector case is one in which the  $C_i$  were chosen to directly optimize the fundamental and second harmonic amplitudes. The goal was to minimize the second harmonic amplitude and to make the fundamental amplitude directly proportional to V, the amplitude of the modulating signal. We will now apply this same technique to the square-law detector case.

Equation (53) gives a general expression for the demodulated signal from a square-law detector. The amplitude of the fundamental is given by

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{amplitude of fundamental} &= -4 \left[ \boldsymbol{\mathcal{B}}_{1} J_{1} \left( \frac{\pi V}{V_{0}} \right) + \boldsymbol{\mathcal{B}}_{2} J_{1} \left( \frac{2 \pi V}{V_{0}} \right) + \boldsymbol{\mathcal{B}}_{3} J_{1} \left( \frac{3 \pi V}{V_{0}} \right) + \boldsymbol{\mathcal{B}}_{4} J_{1} \left( \frac{4 \pi V}{V_{0}} \right) \right. \\ &+ \left. \boldsymbol{\mathcal{B}}_{5} J_{1} \left( \frac{5 \pi V}{V_{0}} \right) + \boldsymbol{\mathcal{B}}_{6} J_{1} \left( \frac{6 \pi V}{V_{0}} \right) + \boldsymbol{\mathcal{B}}_{7} J_{1} \left( \frac{7 \pi V}{V_{0}} \right) + \boldsymbol{\mathcal{B}}_{3} J_{1} \left( \frac{8 \pi V}{V_{0}} \right) \right. \\ &+ \left. \boldsymbol{\mathcal{B}}_{9} J_{1} \left( \frac{9 \pi V}{V_{0}} \right) \right] ,$$

$$(54)$$

while the amplitude of the second harmonic is given by

second harmonic  
amplitude
$$= -4 \left[ \mathcal{Q}_{1}J_{2} \left( \frac{\pi V}{V_{0}} \right) + \mathcal{Q}_{2}J_{2} \left( \frac{2\pi V}{V_{0}} \right) + \mathcal{Q}_{3}J_{2} \left( \frac{3\pi V}{V_{0}} \right) + \mathcal{Q}_{4}J_{2} \left( \frac{4\pi V}{V_{0}} \right) \right]$$

$$+ \mathcal{Q}_{5}J_{2} \left( \frac{5\pi V}{V_{0}} \right) + \mathcal{Q}_{6}J_{2} \left( \frac{6\pi V}{V_{0}} \right) + \mathcal{Q}_{7}J_{2} \left( \frac{7\pi V}{V_{0}} \right) + \mathcal{Q}_{8}J_{2} \left( \frac{8\pi V}{V_{0}} \right) \right]$$

$$+ \mathcal{Q}_{9}J_{2} \left( \frac{9\pi V}{V_{0}} \right) \left] . \qquad (55)$$

It should be kept in mind that the  $A_i$  and  $B_i$  are functions of the  $A_i$  and  $B_i$ .

Writing each Bessel function of (54) and (55) in series form, we obtain

amplitude of  
fundamental = 
$$-4\left[\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{V}{V_0}(B_1 + 2B_2 + 3B_3 + 4B_4 + 5B_5 + 6B_6 + 7B_7 + 8B_8 + 9B_9) - \frac{\pi^3}{16}\left(\frac{V}{V_0}\right)^3(B_1 + 2^3B_2 + 3^3B_3)\right]$$

$$+ 4^{3}\mathscr{B}_{4} + 5^{3}\mathscr{B}_{5} + 6^{3}\mathscr{B}_{6} + 7^{3}\mathscr{B}_{7} + 8^{3}\mathscr{B}_{8} + 9^{3}\mathscr{B}_{9})$$

$$+ \frac{\pi^{5}}{384} \left(\frac{V}{V_{0}}\right)^{5} (\mathscr{B}_{1} + 2^{5}\mathscr{B}_{2} + 3^{5}\mathscr{B}_{3} + 4^{5}\mathscr{B}_{4} + 5^{5}\mathscr{E}_{5})$$

$$+ 6^{5}\mathscr{B}_{6} + 7^{5}\mathscr{B}_{7} + 8^{5}\mathscr{B}_{8} + 9^{5}\mathscr{B}_{9}) - \frac{\pi^{7}}{18,432} \left(\frac{V}{V_{0}}\right)^{7} (\mathscr{B}_{1} + 2^{7}\mathscr{B}_{2})$$

$$+ 3^{7}\mathscr{B}_{3} + 4^{7}\mathscr{B}_{4} + 5^{7}\mathscr{E}_{5} + 6^{7}\mathscr{B}_{6} + 7^{7}\mathscr{B}_{7} + 8^{7}\mathscr{B}_{8} + 9^{7}\mathscr{B}_{9})$$

$$+ \frac{\pi^{9}}{1,474} \frac{\sqrt{9}}{560} \left(\frac{V}{V_{0}}\right)^{9} (\mathscr{E}_{1} + 2^{9}\mathscr{B}_{2} + 3^{9}\mathscr{E}_{3} + 4^{9}\mathscr{B}_{4} + 5^{9}\mathscr{E}_{5})$$

$$+ 6^{9}\mathscr{E}_{6} + 7^{9}\mathscr{E}_{7} + 8^{9}\mathscr{E}_{8} + 9^{9}\mathscr{B}_{9}) - \dots \Big], \qquad (56)$$

,

and

second harmonic  
amplitude
$$= -4 \left[ \frac{\pi^2}{8} \left( \frac{V}{V_0} \right)^2 \left( \mathcal{Q}_1 + 2^2 \mathcal{Q}_2 + 3^2 \mathcal{Q}_3 + 4^2 \mathcal{Q}_4 + 5^2 \mathcal{Q}_5 + 6^2 \mathcal{Q}_6 \right)^4 + 7^2 \mathcal{Q}_7 + 8^2 \mathcal{Q}_8 + 9^2 \mathcal{Q}_9 \right) - \frac{\pi^4}{96} \left( \frac{V}{V_0} \right)^4 \left( \mathcal{A}_1 + 2^4 \mathcal{A}_2 + 3^4 \mathcal{Q}_3 + 4^4 \mathcal{Q}_4 + 5^4 \mathcal{Q}_5 + 6^4 \mathcal{Q}_6 + 7^4 \mathcal{Q}_7 + 8^4 \mathcal{Q}_8 + 9^4 \mathcal{Q}_9 \right) + \frac{\pi^6}{3072} \left( \frac{V}{V_0} \right)^6 \left( \mathcal{Q}_1 + 2^6 \mathcal{Q}_2 + 3^6 \mathcal{Q}_3 + 4^6 \mathcal{Q}_4 + 5^6 \mathcal{Q}_5 + 6^6 \mathcal{Q}_6 + 7^6 \mathcal{Q}_7 + 8^6 \mathcal{Q}_8 + 9^6 \mathcal{Q}_9 \right) - \frac{\pi^8}{184,320} \left( \frac{V}{V_0} \right)^8 \left( \mathcal{Q}_1 + 2^8 \mathcal{Q}_2 + 3^3 \mathcal{Q}_3 + 4^8 \mathcal{Q}_4 + 5^8 \mathcal{Q}_5 + 6^8 \mathcal{Q}_6 + 7^8 \mathcal{Q}_7 + 8^8 \mathcal{Q}_8 \right)$$

+ 
$$9^{8}\boldsymbol{\Omega}_{9}$$
) +  $\frac{\pi^{10}}{8,847,360} \left(\frac{V}{V_{0}}\right)^{10} (\boldsymbol{\Omega}_{1} + 2^{10}\boldsymbol{\Omega}_{2} + 3^{10}\boldsymbol{\Omega}_{3}$   
+  $4^{10}\boldsymbol{\Omega}_{4} + 5^{10}\boldsymbol{\Omega}_{5} + 6^{10}\boldsymbol{\Omega}_{6} + 7^{10}\boldsymbol{\Omega}_{7} + 8^{10}\boldsymbol{\Omega}_{8} + 9^{10}\boldsymbol{\Omega}_{9}$ )  
- ... ]. (57)

There are ten different  $A_i$  and  $B_i$  to be determined:  $A_0$ ,  $A_1$ ,  $A_2$ ,  $A_3$ ,  $A_4$ ,  $B_0$ ,  $B_1$ ,  $B_2$ ,  $B_3$ , and  $B_4$ . One of these 's used up in normalizing K(v) to have a maximum magnitude of unity. Another will be fixed when we set  $B_4 = -A_4$  in an attempt to make the general form of K(v) similar to that of the ideal function of Fig. 14. The remaining eight  $A_i$  and  $B_i$  can be chosen to make eight term coefficients in (56) and (57) be zero. The choice of which eight are made zero is arbitrary. Our choice will be the  $(V/V_0)^3$ ,  $(V/V_0)^5$ ,  $(V/V_0)^7$ , and  $(V/V_0)^9$  terms in the fundamental amplitude and the  $(V/V_0)^2$ ,  $(V/V_0)^4$ ,  $(V/V_0)^6$ , and  $(V/V_0)^8$  terms in the second harmonic amplitude.

The corresponding equations are

ł

$$\mathcal{B}_{1} + 2^{3}\mathcal{B}_{2} + 3^{3}\mathcal{G}_{3} + 4^{3}\mathcal{G}_{4} + 5^{3}\mathcal{G}_{5} + 6^{3}\mathcal{G}_{6} + 7^{3}\mathcal{G}_{7} + 8^{3}\mathcal{G}_{8} + 9^{3}\mathcal{G}_{9} = 0,$$

$$\mathcal{B}_{1} + 2^{5}\mathcal{B}_{2} + 3^{5}\mathcal{B}_{3} + 4^{5}\mathcal{G}_{4} + 5^{5}\mathcal{G}_{5} + 6^{5}\mathcal{G}_{6} + 7^{5}\mathcal{G}_{7} + 8^{5}\mathcal{G}_{8} + 9^{5}\mathcal{G}_{9} = 0,$$

$$\mathcal{B}_{1} + 2^{7}\mathcal{B}_{2} + 5^{5}\mathcal{B}_{3} + 4^{7}\mathcal{B}_{4} + 5^{7}\mathcal{B}_{5} + 6^{7}\mathcal{B}_{6} + 7^{7}\mathcal{B}_{7} + 8^{7}\mathcal{B}_{8} + 9^{7}\mathcal{B}_{9} = 0,$$

$$\mathcal{B}_{1} + 2^{9}\mathcal{B}_{2} + 3^{9}\mathcal{B}_{3} + 4^{9}\mathcal{B}_{4} + 5^{9}\mathcal{B}_{5} + 6^{9}\mathcal{B}_{6} + 7^{9}\mathcal{B}_{7} + 8^{9}\mathcal{B}_{8} + 9^{9}\mathcal{B}_{9} = 0,$$

$$\mathcal{D}_{1} + 2^{2}\mathcal{O}_{2} + 3^{2}\mathcal{O}_{3} + 4^{2}\mathcal{O}_{4} + 5^{2}\mathcal{O}_{5} + 6^{2}\mathcal{O}_{6} + 7^{2}\mathcal{O}_{7} + 8^{2}\mathcal{O}_{8} + 9^{2}\mathcal{O}_{9} = 0,$$

$$\mathcal{D}_{1} + 2^{4}\mathcal{O}_{2} + 3^{4}\mathcal{O}_{3} + 4^{4}\mathcal{O}_{4} + 5^{4}\mathcal{O}_{5} + 6^{4}\mathcal{O}_{6} + 7^{4}\mathcal{O}_{7} + 8^{4}\mathcal{O}_{8} + 9^{4}\mathcal{O}_{9} = 0,$$

$$\mathcal{D}_{1} + 2^{6}\mathcal{O}_{2} + 3^{6}\mathcal{O}_{3} + 4^{6}\mathcal{O}_{4} + 5^{6}\mathcal{O}_{5} + 6^{6}\mathcal{O}_{6} + 7^{6}\mathcal{O}_{7} + 8^{6}\mathcal{O}_{8} + 9^{6}\mathcal{O}_{9} = 0,$$

$$\mathcal{D}_{1} + 2^{6}\mathcal{O}_{2} + 3^{6}\mathcal{O}_{3} + 4^{6}\mathcal{O}_{4} + 5^{6}\mathcal{O}_{5} + 6^{6}\mathcal{O}_{6} + 7^{6}\mathcal{O}_{7} + 8^{6}\mathcal{O}_{8} + 9^{6}\mathcal{O}_{9} = 0,$$

$$\mathcal{D}_{1} + 2^{8}\mathcal{O}_{2} + 3^{8}\mathcal{O}_{3} + 4^{8}\mathcal{O}_{4} + 5^{6}\mathcal{O}_{5} + 6^{8}\mathcal{O}_{6} + 7^{8}\mathcal{O}_{7} + 8^{8}\mathcal{O}_{8} + 9^{8}\mathcal{O}_{9} = 0,$$

$$\mathcal{D}_{1} + 2^{8}\mathcal{O}_{2} + 3^{8}\mathcal{O}_{3} + 4^{8}\mathcal{O}_{4} + 5^{6}\mathcal{O}_{5} + 6^{8}\mathcal{O}_{6} + 7^{6}\mathcal{O}_{7} + 8^{6}\mathcal{O}_{8} + 9^{6}\mathcal{O}_{9} = 0,$$

$$\mathcal{D}_{1} + 2^{8}\mathcal{O}_{2} + 3^{8}\mathcal{O}_{3} + 4^{8}\mathcal{O}_{4} + 5^{8}\mathcal{O}_{5} + 6^{8}\mathcal{O}_{6} + 7^{8}\mathcal{O}_{7} + 8^{8}\mathcal{O}_{8} + 9^{8}\mathcal{O}_{9} = 0,$$

$$\mathcal{D}_{1} + 2^{8}\mathcal{O}_{2} + 3^{8}\mathcal{O}_{3} + 4^{8}\mathcal{O}_{4} + 5^{8}\mathcal{O}_{5} + 6^{8}\mathcal{O}_{6} + 7^{8}\mathcal{O}_{7} + 8^{8}\mathcal{O}_{8} + 9^{8}\mathcal{O}_{9} = 0,$$

$$\mathcal{D}_{2} + 2^{8}\mathcal{O}_{2} + 3^{8}\mathcal{O}_{3} + 4^{8}\mathcal{O}_{4} + 5^{8}\mathcal{O}_{5} + 6^{8}\mathcal{O}_{6} + 7^{8}\mathcal{O}_{7} + 8^{8}\mathcal{O}_{8} + 9^{8}\mathcal{O}_{9} = 0.$$

$$\mathcal{D}_{2} + 2^{8}\mathcal{O}_{2} + 3^{8}\mathcal{O}_{3} + 4^{8}\mathcal{O}_{4} + 5^{8}\mathcal{O}_{5} + 6^{8}\mathcal{O}_{6} + 7^{8}\mathcal{O}_{7} + 8^{8}\mathcal{O}_{8} + 9^{8}\mathcal{O}_{9} = 0.$$

If we rewrite the above equations expressing the  $\mathbf{Q}_i$  and  $\mathbf{B}_i$  in terms of the  $A_i$  and  $B_i$ , and if we let  $B_4 = -A_4$ , we obtain

$$- A_{4}^{2} + 9A_{4}B_{3} + 35A_{4}B_{2} + 91A_{4}B_{1} - 7A_{4}A_{3} + 27A_{3}B_{3} + 65A_{3}B_{2} + 133A_{3}B_{1}$$

$$- 19A_{4}A_{2} + 63A_{2}B_{3} + 125A_{2}B_{2} + 217A_{2}B_{1} - 37A_{4}A_{1} + 117A_{1}B_{3} + 215A_{1}B_{2}$$

$$+ 343A_{1}B_{1} + 189A_{4}B_{0} + 243A_{3}B_{0} + 351A_{2}B_{0} + 513A_{1}B_{0} - 61A_{4}A_{0} + 189A_{0}B_{3}$$

$$+ 335A_{0}B_{2} + 511A_{0}B_{1} + 729A_{0}B_{0} = 0,$$
(59a)

$$- A_{4}^{2} + 33A_{4}B_{3} + 275A_{4}B_{2} + 1267A_{4}B_{1} - 31A_{4}A_{3} + 243A_{3}B_{3} + 1025A_{3}B_{2}$$

$$+ 3157A_{3}B_{1} - 211A_{4}A_{2} + 1023A_{2}B_{3} + 3125A_{2}B_{2} + 7777A_{2}B_{1} - 781A_{4}A_{1}$$

$$+ 3093A_{1}B_{3} + 7775A_{1}B_{2} + 16,807A_{1}B_{1} + 4149A_{4}B_{0} + 8019A_{3}B_{0} + 16,839A_{2}B_{0}$$

$$+ 32,769A_{1}B_{0} - 2101A_{4}A_{0} + 7533A_{0}B_{3} + 16,775A_{0}B_{2} + 32,767A_{0}B_{1}$$

$$+ 59,049A_{0}B_{0} = 0,$$
(59b)

$$- A_{4}^{2} + 129A_{4}B_{3} + 2315A_{4}B_{2} + 18,571A_{4}B_{1} - 127A_{4}A_{3} + 2187A_{3}B_{3} + 16,385A_{3}B_{2} + 78,253A_{3}B_{1} - 2059A_{4}A_{2} + 16,383A_{2}B_{3} + 78,125A_{2}B_{2} + 279,937A_{2}B_{1} - 14,197A_{4}A_{1} + 77,997A_{1}B_{3} + 279,935A_{1}B_{2} + 823,543A_{1}B_{1} + 94,509A_{4}B_{0} + 282,123A_{3}B_{0} + 823,671A_{2}B_{0} \div 2,097,153A_{1}B_{0} - 61,741A_{4}A_{0} + 277,749A_{0}B_{3} + 823,415A_{0}B_{2} + 2,097,151A_{0}B_{1} + 4,782,969A_{0}B_{0} = 0,$$
(59c)

:
$$- A_{4}^{2} + 513A_{4}B_{3} + 20,195A_{4}B_{2} + 281,827A_{4}B_{1} - 511A_{4}A_{3} + 19,683A_{3}B_{3}$$

$$+ 262,145A_{3}B_{2} + 1,953,637A_{3}B_{1} - 19,171A_{4}A_{2} + 262,143A_{2}B_{3} + 1,953,125A_{2}B_{2}$$

$$+ 10,077,697A_{2}B_{1} - 242,461A_{4}A_{1} + 1,952,613A_{1}B_{3} + 10,077.695A_{1}B_{2}$$

$$+ 40,353,607A_{1}B_{1} + 2,215,269A_{4}B_{0} + 10,097,379A_{3}B_{0} + 40,354,119A_{2}B_{0}$$

$$+ 134,217,729A_{1}B_{0} - 1,690,981A_{4}A_{0} + 10,058,613A_{0}B_{3} + 40,353,095A_{0}B_{2}$$

$$+ 134,217,727A_{0}B_{1} + 387,420,489A_{0}B_{0} = 0,$$
(59d)

,

.

1

.

r

$$10A_{4}A_{3} + 6A_{4}B_{3} + 26A_{4}A_{2} + 10A_{4}B_{2} + 50A_{4}A_{1} + 14A_{4}B_{1} + 9A_{3}^{2} - 9B_{3}^{2}$$

$$+ 34A_{3}A_{2} - 30B_{3}B_{2} + 58A_{3}A_{1} - 42B_{3}B_{1} + 25A_{2}^{2} - 25B_{2}^{2} + 74A_{2}A_{1} - 70B_{2}B_{1}$$

$$+ 49A_{1}^{2} - 49B_{1}^{2} + 82A_{4}A_{0} + 18A_{4}B_{0} + 90A_{3}A_{0} - 54B_{3}B_{0} + 106A_{2}A_{0} - 90B_{2}B_{0}$$

$$+ 130A_{1}A_{0} - 126B_{1}B_{0} + 81A_{0}^{2} - 81B_{0}^{2} = 0, \qquad (59e)$$

$$34A_{4}A_{3} + 30A_{4}B_{3} + 194A_{4}A_{2} + 130A_{4}B_{2} + 674A_{4}A_{1} + 350A_{4}B_{1} + 81A_{3}^{2}$$

$$- 81B_{3}^{2} + 514A_{3}A_{2} - 510B_{3}B_{2} + 1282A_{3}A_{1} - 1218B_{3}B_{1} + 625A_{2}^{2} - 625B_{2}^{2}$$

$$+ 2594A_{2}A_{1} - 2590B_{2}B_{1} + 2401A_{1}^{2} - 2401B_{1}^{2} + 1762A_{4}A_{0} + 738A_{4}B_{0}$$

$$+ 2754A_{3}A_{0} - 2430B_{3}B_{0} + 4834A_{2}A_{0} - 4770B_{2}B_{0} + 8194A_{1}A_{0} - 8190B_{1}B_{0}$$

$$+ 6561A_{0}^{2} - 6561B_{0}^{2} = 0, \qquad (59f)$$

$$130A_{4}A_{3} + 126A_{4}B_{3} + 1586A_{4}A_{2} + 1330A_{4}B_{2} + 9650A_{4}A_{1} + 6734A_{4}B_{1}$$

$$+ 729A_{3}^{2} - 729B_{3}^{2} + 8194A_{3}A_{2} - 8190B_{3}B_{2} + 31,378A_{3}A_{1} - 31,122B_{3}B_{1}$$

$$+ 15,625A_{2}^{2} - 15,625B_{2}^{2} + 93,314A_{2}A_{1} - 93,310B_{2}B_{1} + 117,649A_{1}^{2}$$

$$- 117,649B_{1}^{2} + 39,442A_{4}A_{0} + 23,058A_{4}B_{0} + 94,770A_{3}A_{0} - 91,854B_{3}B_{0}$$

$$+ 235,426A_{2}A_{0} - 235,170B_{2}B_{0} + 524,290A_{1}A_{0} - 524,286B_{1}B_{0} + 531,441A_{0}^{2}$$

$$- 531,441B_{0}^{2} = 0,$$
(59g)

$$514A_{4}A_{3} + 510A_{4}B_{3} + 13,634A_{4}A_{2} + 12,610A_{4}B_{2} + 144,194A_{4}A_{1}$$

$$+ 117,950A_{4}B_{1} + 6561A_{3}^{2} - 6561B_{3}^{2} + 131,074A_{3}A_{2} - 131,070B_{3}B_{2}$$

$$+ 781,762A_{3}A_{1} - 780,738B_{3}B_{1} + 390,625A_{2}^{2} - 390,625B_{2}^{2} + 3,359,234A_{2}A_{1}$$

$$- 3,359,230B_{2}B_{1} + 5,764,801A_{1}^{2} - 5,764,801B_{1}^{2} + 912,322A_{4}A_{0} + 650,178A_{4}B_{0}$$

$$+ 3,372,354A_{3}A_{0} - 3,346,110B_{3}B_{0} + 11,530,114A_{2}A_{0} - 11,529,090B_{2}B_{0}$$

$$+ 33,554,434A_{1}A_{0} - 33,554,430B_{1}B_{0} + 43,046,721A_{0}^{2} - 43,046,721B_{0}^{2} = 0.$$
(59h)

It is now necessary to solve these eight simultaneous equations for  $A_0$ ,  $A_1$ ,  $A_2$ ,  $A_3$ ,  $B_0$ ,  $B_1$ ,  $B_2$ , and  $B_3$  in terms of  $A_4$ . In the linear detector case, the simultaneous equations were linear; in the square-law case, they are nonlinear and hence considerably more difficult to solve. Furthermore it is not known a priori whether <u>real</u> solutions for the  $A_i$  and  $B_i$  even exist.

The Eqs. (59) were solved by computer, and the  $A_i$  and  $B_i$  were found to have real solutions. These solutions are

 $A_{3} = -0.0864814 A_{4},$   $A_{2} = 0.0010356 A_{4},$   $A_{1} = 0.0025003 A_{4},$   $A_{0} = -0.0003848 A_{4},$   $B_{3} = 0.2232322 A_{4},$   $B_{2} = -0.0579300 A_{4},$   $B_{1} = 0.0099872 A_{4},$   $B_{0} = -0.0008140 A_{4}.$  n = 9(60)

We now know the coefficients of K(v) in terms of  $A_4$ . By normalizing K(v) to have a maximum magnitude of unity, absolute values are obtained.

ć

Similar calculations can be carried out for n = 7, 5, and 3. When n = 7, for example, three terms in the expression for the amplitude of the fundamental and three terms in the expression for the second harmonic amplitude can be set to zero. This requires the solution of six simultaneous nonlinear equations.

The final results for K(v) using the maximally-linear approximation technique are

n = 9   
K(v) = - (0.000132 + i0.000280)e   

$$i \frac{9 \pi v}{2V_0} + (0.000859 + i0.003433)e^{i \frac{7 \pi v}{2V_0}}$$
  
+ (0.000356 - i0.019911)e   
 $i \frac{5 \pi v}{2V_0} - (0.029724 - i0.076727)e^{i \frac{3 \pi v}{2V_0}}$   
+ (0.343708 - i0.343708)e   
 $i \frac{\pi v}{2V_0} + (0.343708 + i0.343708)e^{-i \frac{\pi v}{2V_0}}$ 

$$\mathbf{n} = 7 \qquad \mathbf{K}(\mathbf{v}) = (0.0075 + i0.01264)e^{-i\frac{3}{2}\frac{\pi}{2V_0}} + (0.00075 + i0.019911)e^{-i\frac{5}{2}\frac{\pi}{2V_0}} + (0.00075 + i0.019911)e^{-i\frac{5}{2}\frac{\pi}{2V_0}} + (0.00075 + i0.000280)e^{-i\frac{9}{2}\frac{\pi}{2V_0}} + (0.00075 + i0.000280)e^{-i\frac{9}{2}\frac{\pi}{2V_0}} + (0.000720 - i0.012645)e^{-i\frac{5}{2}\frac{\pi}{2V_0}} + (0.007720 - i0.012645)e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{\pi}{2V_0}} + (0.0077340 - i0.065522)e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{\pi}{2}} + (0.348012 - i0.348012)e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{\pi}{2}} + (0.000720 + i0.065522)e^{-i\frac{3}{2}\frac{\pi}{2}} + (0.000720 + i0.065522)e^{-i\frac{3}{2}\frac{\pi}{2}} + (0.000720 + i0.065522)e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{\pi}{2}} + (0.000720 + i0.065522)e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{\pi}{2}} + (0.000720 - i0.001207)e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{\pi}{2}} + (0.000720 + i0.012645)e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{\pi}{2}} + (0.000720 + i0.001207)e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{\pi}{2}} + (0.000720 + i0.000755 - i0.0005565)e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{\pi}{2}} + (0.000705 - i0.001207)e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{\pi}{2}} + (0.000705 - i0.000766)e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{\pi}{2}} + (0.000705 + i0.005565)e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{\pi}{2}} + (0.00$$

(61d)

,

3



,



n = 1 K(v) = (0.353553 - i0.353553)e 
$$i\frac{\pi v}{2v_0} + (0.353553 + i0.353553)e^{-i\frac{\pi v}{2v_0}}$$
.  
(61e)

The K(v) of (63) are plotted in Fig. 15 together with the ideal characteristic of Eq. (44). The performance of the modulators corresponding to these K(v) is evaluated by substituting the A<sub>i</sub> and B<sub>i</sub> of Eqs. (61) into Eq. (53) (or, for  $n \neq 9$ , into comparable expressions). The results are shown in Fig. 16.

From Fig. 16e, the deviation from linearity of the fundamental is seen to decrease substantially with increasing n. Similar behavior is shown in Fig. 16d for the magnitude of the third harmonic. Figure 16c shows the results obtaine ' for the second harmonic magnitude. Here it should be recalled that for n = 1, no second harmonic is present and hence the synthesized modulators are inferior to a conventional modulator in this respect. Finally the amplitude of the fundamental is shown plotted in Fig. 16b. It is seen that the decrease in fundamental amplitude is even more pronounced in the square-law detector case than in the envelope-detector case. Thus it is important that constant fundamental-amplitude curves similar to those of Fig. 10 be plotted to show more accurately the improvement obtained.

Such curves are shown in Fig. 17 where (a) the deviation from linearity of the fundamental and (b) the magnitude of the second harmonic are plotted as a function of n for various fixed values of fundamental amplitude. From Fig. 17a it is seen that substantial uniform improvement in fundamental linearity is obtained for increasing values of n in spite of the fall-off in fundamental amplitude. The greatest improvement is obtained in going from 1 to 3 stages, with slightly less improvement from 3 to 5, and so forth. That is, the improvement obtained from additional stages is greatest for small n and decreases with increasing n.

C-75



Figure 16a



АМРЕНТИРЕ ОF FUNDAMANTAL

.

ų



-

「日本の

WAGNITUDE OF 2ND HARMONIC







C-80



DEVIATION FROM LINEARITY OF THE FUNDAMENTAL



# Figure 17b

For the square-law case, the maximally-linear approximation technique would have to be considered a qualified success. Fundamental distortion is uniformly reduced by increasing the number of stages, but second harmonic is present for n = 3, 5, 7, 9, ... which is not present for n = 1. The modulator designs which correspond to the K(v) of Eqs. (61) are listed in Table II for convenience.

#### V. SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

A technique has been described which allows the synthesis of electro-optic amplitude inodulators having arbitrary modulation characteristics. The technique is a direct analogy of the procedure of Ammann and Yarborough [26] for synthesizing naturally-birefringent networks. With the procedure of this paper, a voltage transfer function K(v) of the form given in Eq. (3) can be realized by an electro-optic network of the form shown in Fig. 3. The synthesis procedure arranges standard components in a particular fashion to form a modulator having the required voltage transfer function.

The manner in which K(v) is chosen is very important. If sufficient care is not taken in this choice, the performance of the synthesized modulator can easily be inferior to that obtained from the simple, conventional amplitude modulator of Fig. 1. Several techniques for choosing K(v) were tried with varying degrees of success. The most satisfactory results were obtained when the  $C_i$  of K(v) were chosen to directly optimize the modulator property (or properties) of greatest interest. This was done for two cases of interest: the design of a modulator for use with (a) an envelope detector, and (b) a square-law detector.

The modulator properties which were chosen (arbitrarily) for optimization in this paper were the following. The modulating signal v was assumed to be of the form,  $v = V\cos \omega_m t$ . The demodulated signal from the detector will in general contain a dc term, a fundamental, and harmonics. It was deemed desirable for the fundamental to be

C-83

.

.

Table II

linearly proportional to V, and for the harmonics to be minimized. Hence modulator performance was measured by calculating the deviation from linearity of the fundamental and the amplitudes of the harmonics.

Best results were obtained for both the envelope and square-law detector cases by writing the fundamental and harmonic amplitudes as power series in V. The  $C_i$  were then chosen to eliminate as many nonlinear terms from the fundamental expression and as many low-order terms from the second harmonic expression as possible. The K(v) so derived do indeed give improved modulator performance (see Figs. 9, 10, 15, and 16); the modulator designs corresponding to these K(v) are tabulated in Tables I and II. How-ever the improvement is, in some respects, less than might be hoped for. It is likely that still other approximation techniques will eventually be found which yield further improvement.

#### ACKNOWLEDGMENT

The authors are grateful to L. A. Drews, S. Barnard, B. Furst, and M. A. Wright for assistance with the computations.

#### FOOTNOTES

ŕ

This work was supported by the National Aeronautics and Space Administration under Contract NAS8-20570.

- 1. To put it still more accurately,  $\pi v/V_0$  plays the same role for the electro-optic cell that  $\omega$  does for the birefringent crystal.
- 2. The linear characteristic may have any slope whatsoever, and hence there are an infinite number of possible ideal characteristics. We have chosen a characteristic with a slope of unity.

,

#### REFERENCES

- [1] B. H. Billings, "The Electro-Optic Effect in Uniaxial Crystals of the Type XH<sub>2</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>.
  I. Theoretical, "J. Opt. Soc. Am., vol. 39, pp. 797-801, October 1949; "The Electro-Optic Effect in Uniaxial Crystals of the Type XH<sub>2</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>. II. Experimental, "J. Opt. Soc. Am., vol. 39, pp. 802-808, October 1949.
- [2] F. Sterzer, D. J. Blattner, and S. F. Miniter, "Cuprous Chloride Light Modulators,"
   J. Opt. Soc. Am., vol. 54, pp. 62-68, January 1964.
- [3] J. E. Geusic, S. K. Kurtz, L. G. Van Uitert, and S. H. Wemple, "Electro-optic Properties of Some ABO<sub>3</sub> Perovskites in the Paraelectric Phase," Appl. Phys. Lett., vol. 4, pp. 141-143, April 15, 1964.
- [4] S. M. Lee and S. M. Hauser, "Kerr Constant Evaluation of Organic Liquids and Solutions," Rev. Sci. Instr., vol. 35, pp. 1679-1681, December 1964.
- [5] I. P. Kaminow, "Barium Titanate Light Phase Modulator," Appl. Phys. Lett., vol. 7, pp. 123-125, September 1, 1965; vol. 8, p. 54, January 15, 1966.
- [6] C. J. Johnson, "Some Dielectric and Electro-optic Properties of BaTi0<sub>3</sub> Single Crystals," Appl. Phys. Lett., vol. 7, pp. 221-223, October 15, 1965.
- [7] F. S. Chen, J. E. Geusic, S. K. Kurtz, J. G. Skinner, and S. H. Wemple, "Light Modulation and Beam Deflection with Potassium Tantalate-Niobate Crystals,"
   J. Appl. Phys., vol. 37, pp. 388-398, January 1966.
- [8] P. V. Lenzo, E. G. Spencer, and K. Nassau, "Electro-Optic Coefficients in Single-Domain Ferroelectric Lithium Niobate," J. Opt. Soc. Am., vol. 56, pp. 633-635, May 1966.
- [9] I. P. Kaminow, "Microwave Modulation of the Electro-Optic Effect in KH<sub>2</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>,"
   Flys. Rev. Lett., vol. 6, pp. 528-530, May 15, 1961.
- [10] D. F. Holshouser, H. Von Foerster, and G. L. Clark, "Microwave Modulation of Light Using the Kerr Effect," J. Opt. Soc. Am., vol. 51, pp. 1360-1365, December 1961.

- [11] R. H. Blumenthal, "Design of a Microwave-Frequency Light Modulator," Proc. IRE, vol. 50, pp. 452-456, April 1962.
- [12] I. P. Kaminow, R. Kompfner, and W. H. Louisell, "Improvements in Light Modulators of the Traveling-Wave Type," IRE Trans. on Microwave Theory and Techniques, vol. MTT-10, pp. 311-313, September 1962.
- [13] I. P. Kaminow and J. Liu, "Propagation Characteristics of Partially Loaded Two-Conductor Transmission Line for Broadband Light Modulators," Proc. IEEE, vol. 51, pp. 132-136, January 1963.
- [14] W. W. Rigrod and I. P. Kaminow, "Wide-Band Microwave Light Modulation," Proc. IEEE, vol. 51, pp. 137-140, January 1963.
- [15] M. DiDomenico, Jr. and L. K. Anderson, "Broadband Electro-Optic Traveling-Wave Light Modulators," Bell System Tech. J., vol. 42, pp. 2621-2678, November 1963.
- [16] C. E. Enderby, "Wideband Optical Modulator," Proc. IEEE (Correspondence), vol. 52, pp. 981-982, August 1964.
- [17] C. J. Peters, "Gigacycle-Bandwidth Coherent-Light Traveling-Wave Amplitude Modulator," Proc. IEEE, vol. 53, pp. 455-460, May 1965.
- [18] J. E. Hopson, "Harmonic Structure of Modulated Light Beams," IEEE Trans. on Communication Systems, vol. CS-11, pp. 464-469, December 1963.
- [19] G. Grau, "Verzerrungen bei der Amplitudenmodulation von Licht," Archiv der Elektrischen Übertragung, vol. 18, pp. 389-392, June 1964.
- [20] H. G. Jerrard, "Optical Compensators for Measurement of Elliptical Polarization,"
   J. Opt. Soc. Am., vol. 38, pp. 35-59, January 1948.
- [21] S. E. Harris, E. O. Ammann, and I. C. Chang, "Optical Network Synthesis Using Birefringent Crystals. I. Synthesis of Lossless Networks of Equal-Length Crystals," J. Opt. Soc. Am., vol. 54, pp. 1267-1279, October 1964.

- [22] E. O. Ammann and I. C. Chang, "Optical Network Synthesis Using Birefringent Crystals. II. Synthesis of Networks Containing One Crystal, Optical Compensator, and Polarizer per Stage," J. Opt. Soc. Am., vol. 55, pp. 835-841, July 1965.
- [23] E. O. Ammann, "Optical Network Synthesis Using Birefringent Crystals. III. Some General Properties of Lossless Birefringent Networks," J. Opt. Soc. Am., vol. 56, pp. 943-951, July 1966.
- [24] E. O. Ammann, "Optical Network Synthesis Using Birefringent Crystals. IV. Synthesis of Lossless Double-Pass Networks," J. Opt. Soc. Am., vol. 56, pp. 952-955, July 1966.
- [25] E. O. Ammann, "Synthesis of Electro-Optic Shutters Having a Prescribed Transmission vs. Voltage Characteristic," J. Opt. Soc. Am., vol. 56, pp. 1081-1088, August 1966.
- [26] E. O. Ammann and J. M. Yarborough, "Optical Network Synthesis Using Birefringent Crystals. V. Synthesis of Lossless Networks Containing Equal-Length Crystals and Compensators," J. Opt. Soc. Am., (to be published).
- [27] See for example, T. S. Gray, "Applied Electronics," New York: John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1956, p. 705.
- [28] E. O. Ammann and J. M. Yarborough, "Optical Network Synthesis Using Birefringent Crystals. VI. Additional Techniques for the Synthesis of Lossless Double-Pass Networks," J. Opt. Soc. Am., (to be published).

#### CAPTIONS FOR FIGURES AND TABLES

۰. <sup>۱</sup>٬

- Fig. 1 Model for conventional electro-optic amplitude modulators.
- Fig. 2 Basic configuration for the birefringent network (4 stages) obtained from the synthesis procedure of Part I [21]. F and S denote the "fast" and "slow" axes of the birefringent crystals.
- Fig. 3 Basic configuration of the birefringent network (4 stages) obtained from the synthesis procedure of Part V [26]; each stage contains a birefringent crystal and optical compensator. This also represents the basic configuration of the modulators obtained by the techniques of this paper; in this case each stage consists of an electro-optic cell and optical compensator.
- Fig. 4 Naturally-birefringent crystal used as the basic "building block" of a birefringent network. This also represents an electro-optic cell used as the building block of an electro-optic network.
- Fig. 5 Ideal voltage transfer function K(v) for an amplitude modulator which is followed by an envelope detector.
- Fig. 6 Periodic ideal voltage transfer functions for an amplitude modulator having (a) n odd, and (b) n even.
- Fig. 7 Fourier approximations to the ideal K(v) of Fig. 6a.
- Fig. 8 Envelope detector output vs. V/V<sub>0</sub> when modulators having the K(v) of Fig. 7 are employed: (a) dc component of output; (b) amplitude of fundamental; (c) magnitude of second harmonic; (d) magnitude of third harmonic; and (e) deviation from linearity of fundamental.
- Fig. 9 Envelope detector output vs.  $V/V_0$  when modulators synthesized using the maximallylinear approximation are employed: (a) dc component of output; (b) amplitude of fundamental; (c) magnitude of second harmonic; (d) magnitude of third harmonic; and (e) deviation from linearity of fundamental. The magnitude of the second harmonic is zero for n = 2, 4, 6, 8, and 10.

- Fig. 10 Envelope detector output vs. n when modulators synthesized using the maximally-linear approximation are employed. Each curve represents a constant amplitude of the fundamental. Dotted lines connect points for which n is even while solid lines connect points for which n is odd. Shown are (a) deviation from linearity of fundamental, and (b) magnitude of second harmonic.
- Fig. 11 K(v) obtained using the maximally-linear approximation (n odd, envelope detector)
- Fig. 12 K(v) obtained using the maximally-linear approximation (n even, envelope detector)
- Fig. 13 Ideal voltage transfer function K(v) for an amplitude modulator which is followed by a square-law detector.
- Fig. 14 Periodic ideal voltage transfer function for an amplitude modulator having n odd.
- Fig. 15 K(v) obtained using the maximally-linear approximation (n odd, square-law detector) Fig. 16 Square-law detector output vs.  $V/V_0$  when modulators having the K(v) of Fig. 15 are employed: (a) dc component of output; (b) amplitude of fundamental; (c) magnitude of second harmonic; (d) magnitude of third harmonic; and (e) deviation from linearity of fundamental. The magnitude of the second harmonic is zero for n = 1.
- Fig. 17 Square-law detector output vs. n when modulators synthesized using the maximallylinear approximation are employed. Each curve represents a constant amplitude of the fundamental. Shown are (a) deviation from linearity of fundamental, and (b) magnitude of second harmonic. Dotted lines connect points for which n is even while solid lines connect points for which n is odd. For n = 1, the magnitude of the second harmonic is zero.

C-91

#### Appendix D

### A COMPUTER PROGRAM FOR CALCULATING THE FOURIER SERIES COEFFICIENTS AN ARBITRARY IDEAL FUNCTION

A common method of choosing the  $C_i$  of Equation (2.1) is to make them the Fourier series coefficients of the ideal function. Since this calculation was repeated many times during the course of this work, a program was written so the coefficients could be calculated by computer. The computer language used in writing the program is FORTRAN (for a Control Data Corporation 3200 computer).

The program accomplishes the following things. For a given ideal function, the  $C_i$  are calculated for the cases n = 1, 2, 3, ... 20. In each case, the  $C_i$  are normalized so that the maximum value of  $|C(\omega)|^2$  is unity. In addition, for each case the computer plots the magnitude of  $C(\omega)$  over one period. It should be mentioned that the program can handle asymmetric as well as symmetric ideal functions; these result in complex values for the  $C_i$ . The only restriction is that the ideal function must be real.

The program is given below.

```
PROGRAM FOURIER
    EXTERNAL FUNCT
    COMMON = (121)
    COMMON TORD . IFUNCT
    DIMENSION G(121) • A(15) • B(15) • GRAND(121) • X(121) • SUM(121)
    A AND B ARE FOURIER COFFEICIENTS
    F(X)=A0+SUM(A(K)*COS(KX)+B(K)*SIN(KX)), K=1.KF FOR KF=1.N
100 FORMAT(1H0+2HC(+12+2H)=+F12+5+2X+F12+5+10X+E12+5)
102 FORMAT(1H1)
103 FORMAT(1H .5(F8.5.2X.F)2.5.4X))
104 FORMAT(1H1)
105 FORMAT(F14.7)
    N=10
    P1=3.1415927
    READ 105, EDS
    1000=0
    IFUNCT=1
                          DO 1 K=1.121
    X(K)=(K-61)*P1/60.
  1 F(K)=FUNCT(X(K))
    PRINT 103, (X(J),F(J),J=1,5)
    nn 2 1=1.23
    15=1*5
  2 PRINT 103, X(15+1),F(15+1),X(15+2),F(15+2),X(15+3),F(15+3),X(15+4
   1) • F (15+4) • X (15+5) • F (15+5)
    PRINT 103. X(121).F(121)
   CALL PLOT(0)
    ANS=SIMPSON(FUNCT+-PI+PI+FPS)
    AO = ANS/(2 \cdot *PI)
                                             - - -
    PRINT 102
    K=0
    PRINT 100. K.AO
    CALCULATE A(K). B(K). K=1.N
    DO 30 K=1+N
    IORD=K
    IFUNCT=1
    ANS=SIMPSON(FUNCT+-PI+PI+FPS)
    A(K)=ANS/PI
    IFUNCT=2
    ANS=SIMPSON(FUNCT+-PI+PI+EPS)
 30 R(K)=ANS/DT
   PDINT A(K),R(K)
   DO 40 K=1+N
    C1=A(K)/2.
    (2=-R(K)/2.
40 PRINT 100. K.CI.C2
    FORM ARGUMENTS AND INITIALIZE SUMS
   nn 50 K=1.121
50 SUM(K) = A0 + A(1) * COS(X(K)) + B(1) * SIN(X(K))
   DO 80 K=1.N
    PRINT 102
    IF (K.FO.1)61.51
51 DO 60 J=1+121
60 SUM(J)=SUM(J)+A(K)*COS(K*X(J))+B(K)*SIN(K*X(J))
A1 SUMMAX=SUM(1)
```

Ċ

- --

. . . .

-- -

C

C

. . . . . .

.....

```
nn 62 J=2.121
       62 SUMMAX=AMAX1 (SUM (J), SUMMAX)
          00 63 J=1.121
       63 = (J) = SUM(J) / SUMMAX
          PRINT 103. (X(J).F(J).J=1.5)
          nn 70 1=1.23
          15=1*5
       70 PRINT 103• X(15+1)•F(15+1)•X(15+2)•F(15+2)•X(15+3)•F(15+3)•X(15+4)
         1) • F (15+4) • X (15+5) • F (15+5)
          PRINT 103. X(121).F(121)
          DDINT 194
          DO 74 1=1.K
          11=K-1+1
          12=1-1
          C1 = \Delta(T1)/(2 \cdot * SUMMAX)
          CP = -B(11)/(2 \cdot SUMMAX)
       74 PRINT 100+ 12+C1+C2
          C1 = A0/SUMMAX
----
                                 . . .
          PRINT 100. K.CI
          DA 75 1=1.K
          C1 = \Delta(T) / (2 \cdot * SUMMAX)
          CP = R(1)/(P_*SUMMAX)
          11=K+T
       75 PRINT 100, 11,01,02
          CALL PLOT(K)
       RO CONTINUE
                                                                  .
          STOP
          FND
                                                   . . . . . . . .
```

•• •

----

.. ...

. \_ . . .

1:-----

11-----

-----

.....

- . .

. .. .. .

~ • • •

· .... . .... ...

- ----

		COMMON N. TFUNCT
		P1=3.1415927
		TP1=2./P
		IF (X.LT. (-PI))100.1
	1	1F(X.LT. (-3. *P1/4.))10.20
	10	F=_90RT(2,5+TP(*X)
		GO TO 01
	20	1F(X.LT.(~P1/4.))30.40
	20	F=SOPT(5-TP1*X)
		GO TO 91
	40	TF(X.LT.PT/4.)50.60
	50	F#SORT(.S+TP1*X)
		GO TO 91
	60	1F(X+LT+(3+*P1/4+))70+80
	70	F=SQRT(1.5-TPI*X)
		co To 91
	80	1F(X.LF,01)90.100
	90	F=_SORT(-1.5+TP1*X)
	91	TECTEUNICT.ED.192.93
	92	FUNCT=F*COS(N*X)
-		DETIJON
	03	1F ( 1FUNCT . FO. 2)94.95
	94	FUNCT=F*STN(N*X)
		RETURN
	95	PRINT 96. IFUNCT
	96	FORMAT(1H0+7HIFUNCT=+13)
		CALL APNORMAL
	100	PRINT 101 + X
	101	FORMAT(1HO)2HX=F14.7)
-		CALL ARNORMAL
		に N B

. . ..

• -•-

.

FUNCTION FUNCT(X)

COMMON G(121)

----

• •

. . ....

•

· ••

- -

D-4

-

.. .

,

-

-

•

-

.

•

```
FUNCTION SIMPSON(F.A1.B.E)
   EXTERNAL F
   DIMENSION DX(30)+EPSP(30)+X2(30)+X3(30)+F2(30)+F3(30)+F4(30)
   DIMENSION FMP(30), FBP(30), EST2(30), EST3(30), PVAL(30,3)
   DIMENSION RTRN(30)
   INTEGER RTRN
   A= A1
   EPS=E
   LVL=0
   MLVL.≃C
   ABSAR=0.0
   EST=0.0
   DA=B-A
   FA=F(A)
   FM = 4 \cdot 0 * F((A+B)/2 \cdot 0)
   F8=F(B)
10 LVL=LVL+1
   MLVL=LVL
   DX(LVL)=DA/3.0
   SX=DX(LVL)/6.0
   F_{1}=4.0*F(A+DX(LVL)/2.0)
   X2(LVL)=A+DX(LVL)
   F2(LVL) = F(X2(LVL))
   X3(LVL) = X2(LVL) + DX(LVL)
   F3(LVL)=F(X3(LVL))
   EPSP(LVL)=EPS
   F4(LVL)=4.0*F(X3(LVL)+DX(LVL)/2.0)
   FMP(LVL)=FM
   EST1 = (FA+F1+F2(LVL))*SX
   FBP(LVL)=F6
   EST2(LVL) = (F2(LVL) + F3(LVL) + FM) + SX
   EST3(LVL) = (F3(LVL) + F4(LVL) + FB) * SX
   SUM = EST1 + EST2(LVL) + EST3(LVL)
   ABSAR=ABSAR-ABS(EST)+ABS(EST1)+ABS(EST2(LVL))+ABS(EST3(LVL))
   IF (ABS(EST-SUM) • LE • EPSP(LVL) * ABSAR) 20 • 15
15 IF(LVL .LT. 30)30.21
20 IF (MLVL+LT+4) 15+21
21 LVL=LVL-1
   I=RTRN(LVL)
   PVAL(LVL . I)=SUM
   GO TO (40.50.60).I
30 RTRN(LVL)=1
   DA=DX(LVL)
   FM=F1
   FB=F2(LVL)
   EPS=EPSP(LVL)/1.7
   EST=EST1
   GO TO 10
40 RTRN(LVL)=2
   DA= DX(LVL)
   FA=F2(LVL)
   FM=FMP(LVL)
   FB=F3(LVL)
   EPS=EPSP(LVL)/1.7
   EST=EST2(LVL)
   A=X2(LVL)
```

. . . . .

-----

..........

**...** 

GO TO 10 50 RTRN(LVL)=3 DA=DX(LVL) FA=F3(LVL) FM=F4(LVL) FB=FBP(LVL) EPS=EPSP(LVL)/1.7 EST=EST3(LVL) A=X3(LVL) GO TO 10 60 SUM=PVAL(LVL.1)+PVAL(LVL.2)+PVAL(LVL.3) IF(LVL.GT. 1)20.70 70 SIMPSON=SUM RETURN ų

. . .

END

- -

.. .

...

**.** .

\*\*\*

.

~

·····

- -- -

-

-

```
SUBBOLITINE PLAT (N)
         COMMON = (121)
         DIMENSION LINE (121)
         CONST=1.09
          18LN# = 606060608
          145T=546060608
          11=316060A0R
         1015H=4060606060
         TPIUS=206060608
         WRITE (61.10) N
      10 FORMAT (7H1 PLOT , 12)
         00 20 1=1.121
         LINF(I)=IRLNK
      20 CONTINUE
         LINF(G1)=II
         LINE (58)=016060604
         1 INF (59) = 336060608
         LINF(60)=01606060R
     21 00 23 1=1.121
          IF (F(1).GT.1.11)22.23
      22 F(1)=-99.9
      23 CONTINUE
      25 00 40 1=1.121
          1F(F(1).GT.CONST)26.40
      26 LINE(1)=1AST
         F(1)=-00,0
      40 CONTINUE
         WRITE(61,50) (LINE(1), I=1,121)
      50 FORMAT(1H +5X+12141)
         CONST=CONST-.02
____
          1F (CONST.LF.-0.01)51.60
      51 IF (CONST.LT. -. 02)90.52
      52 DO 53 1=1.121
         LINF(I)=IDASH
      53 CONTINUE
         DO 54 1=1.121.15
         I THE (T)=TPLUS
      54 CONTINUE
         GO TO 25
      60 DO 61 1=1,121
         LINF(I)=TRLNK
      61 CONTINUE
         LINF(61)=11
         . IF (CONST+LT++995+AND+CONST+GT++985)98+99
      98 LINE (58)=016060608
         LINE (59) = 33606060R
         LINF (60)=006060608
         CO TO 25
      99 1F (CONST.LT. . 895 . AND . CONST. GT. . 885)62.63
      62 LINE (59) = 336060608
         LINF(60)=116060608
         GO TO 25
      63 1# (CONST.LT. .. 795. AND. CONST. GT. .. 785)64.65
      64 LINE (59)=336060608
         LINF(60)=10606060B
         GO TO 25
```

: \_\_\_\_ ·

· ·······

```
65 1F (CONST.LT. . 695. AND. CONST. GT. . 685)66.67
 AA LINE (59)=336060608
    LINF(60)=076060608
    GO TO 25
 67 IF (CONST.LT...595.AND.CONST.GT...585)68.69
 68 LINE (59) = 336060608
    1 INF (60)=06606060R
    CO TO 25
 69 IF (CONST.LT. . 495. AND. CONST.GT. . 485)70.71
 70 LINE (59)=336060608
    LINF(60)=05606060B
    CO TO 25
 71 IF (CONST.LT... 395. AND. CONST.GT... 385)72.73
 72 LINE (59) = 336060608
    LINE(60)=04606060B
    CO TO 25
 73 IF (CONST.LT. .. 295. AND. CONST. GT. . 285)74,75
 74 LINE(59)=33606060B
                          . .....
    LINF(60)=036060608
    GO TO 25
 75 IF (CONST.LT... 195. AND. CONST. GT... 185)76.77
 76 LINE(59)=336060608
    LINE(60)=02606060B
    GO TO 25
 77 IF (CONST.LT..095.AND.CONST.GT..085)78,25
 78 LINE (59)=336060608
    LINF(60) = 01606060R
    CO TO 25
 90 CONTINUE
    WRITE(61.100)
100 FORMAT(1H +3X+4H-180+11X+4H-135+11X+3H-90+12X+3H-45+14X+1H0+
   X13X+2H45+13X+2H90+13X+3H135+12X+3H180)
    WRITE(61.101)
101 FORMAT(181)
    WRITE (61.100)
    DO 120 1=1+121
    IF(F(1)+LT+-1+11)110+120
110 F(1)=-99.9
120 CONTINUE
    no 130 I=1.121
    I. INF (I)=IDASH
130 CONTINUE
    DO 140 T=1+121+15
    L_{TNF}(T) = TPLUS
140 CONTINUE
    WRITE(61.50) (LINE(1).1=1.121)
    DO 150 1=1+121
    LINF(I)=IRLNK
150 CONTINUE
    LINE(61)=11
155 DO 180 1=1.121
    IF (F(1).GT.CONST)170.180
170 LINF(1)=1AST
    F(1)=-99.0
180 CONTINUE
    WRITE(61+50) (LINE(1)+1=1+121)
```

----

. . . . . . .

		CONST=CONST-02
		nn 190 J=1,121
		[ TNF(T) = TR[_NK
	100	CONITINUE
		1 TNF(61)=11
	200	IF (CONST.LT 105 AND. CONST. GT 115)210.211
	210	1 INF(60) = 016060609
		LINE(59)=33606060B
·· · ·		
	211	15 (CONST-1 T 205-AND - CONST CT - 215 212 - 212
	212	
	<u> </u>	
		LINE(59)=33606060B
		L INF (58) = IDASH
		GO TO 155
1	513	IF (CONST.LT305.AND.CONST.GT315)214.215
	214	LINF(60)=03606060B
		LINE(59)=33606060P
		LINF(5R)=IDASK
		SO TO 155
	215	IF (CONST
	216	
·	-	LINE (59)-33606060B
·		
	<b></b>	
!!	217	IF (CONST • L1 • - • • • • • • ANO • CONST • GI • - • 515)218 • 219
	218	LINF(60)=05606060P
17		LINF(59)=33606060B
		LINE(58)=IDASH
'8		GO TO 155
	219	IF (CONST.LT 605.AND.CONST.GT 615)220.221
1:	220	LINF(60) = 0.6606060B
,		LINF (59) = 336060608
		LINE(58)=IDASH
·		GO TO 155
	221	IF (CONST + 1 T + - + 705 + AND + CONST + GT + - + 715)222+223
	222	LINE(60)=076060608
	121	
<b>.</b>		$\frac{(1)}{(1)} \frac{(1)}{(1)} = \frac{(1)}{(1)} \frac{(1)}{(1)} \frac{(1)}{(1)} = \frac{(1)}{(1)} $
	223	IF (CONSTALL + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + +
•·· •·	224	L INF (60) = 10606060B
		$1_{1}NF(59) = 33606060R$
		LINF(5R)=IDASH
		CO TO 155
	225	IF(CONSTOLT 905 AND CONSTOT 915)226 227
	2 <u>2</u> 6	LINF(60) = 11606060B
-		LINF(59)=33606060A
	•	LINF (58)=1DASH
		GO TO 155
	227	IF (CONST.LT1.005.AND.CONST.GT1.015)228.229
	228	LINF(60) = 0.0606060B
·		1.1 NE(59) = 336060608
		LINE(58)=0.1606060B
(1985 - 11.1987 - 1 - 2 - 1	••••	
·		(דרד   יון נוד)

```
229 IF (CONST.LT.-1.105.AND.CONST.GT.-1.115)230.231
        230 LINF(60)=01606060B
             LINF (59)=33606060A
             LINF (58)=016060608
             1. INF (57)=10ASH
             GO TO 155
                                                                      231 IF (CONST.LF.-1.13)132.155
        129 RETURN
             PAIN
                    - -
                . . .
- --
                                                                   - -
    -----
                    ••• ••
                                        ···· ···
                          ---
-----
                                     .
                                                                    ......
----
     - - ..
                                                      - - ·
                                                                               .....
                                                                       -----
--- ·
        .
                                         . .
. . . . .
.
- -- -
                      . . . .
<del>. . . .</del> .
              ----
                       ---
                                                                     - --
                                                                          -
                                                   · ---
```

D-10

---

.

#### Appendix E

## A COMPUTER PROGRAM FOR THE SYNTHESIS OF LOSSLESS NETWORKS CONTAINING EQUAL-LENGTH CRYSTALS AND COMPENSATORS

This Appendix gives a computer program written for performing the synthesis procedure of Appendix A. The computer language used is FORTRAN (for a Control Data Corporation 3200 computer). The desired  $C_i$  are the inputs to the program. The computer calculates the rotation angle  $\theta_i$  and compensator delay  $b_i$  for each stage of the network. Having calculated the  $\theta_i$  and  $b_i$ , the computer then calculates the  $C(\omega)$  which is obtained from them as a check.

The program is given below.

PROGRAM SYNTHES Ċ, PROGRAM FINDS THE RELATIVE CRYSTAL ANGLES AND RETARDATIONS ۲ C FOR AN OPTICAL FILTER WITH N CRYSTALS FACH FOLLOWED BY C AN OPTICAL COMPENSATOR TYPE COMPLEX (4) CMPLX.CONJ TYPE COMPLEX (4) C.F.A.R.D.RR.RI TYPE COMPLEX (4) CTMP INTEGER ARRIN REAL IN COMMON  $N \in (17) + IO \in (17) + A(33) + R(32) + D(17)$ DIMENSION RR(16) +RI(16) C IS ARRAY OF GIVEN COMPLEX COFFEICIENTS IO IS MAXIMUM VALUE OF FUNCTION A IS ARRAY OF X POLYNOMIAL COFFEICIENTS FORMAT STATEMENTS 101 FORMAT(1H0+10HC(1)+ 1=0++13) 102 FORMAT(1H0.3H10=.F14.7) 103 FORMAT(1H0+10HA(1)+ I=1++13) 104 FORMAT(1H0,9HROOTS ARF) 105 FORMAT(1H0+10HD(I)+ I=0++13) 106 FORMAT(1H0+14HNO INVERSE FOR+13+8H TH ROOT) 107 FORMAT(1H0.22HCONJUGATE INVERSES ARE) 108 FORMAT(1H0.21HNORMALIZED D(1). 1=0.13) FPS=1.0F-02 GET COFFFICIENTS OF FILTER TRANSFER FUNCTION 1 CALL READC IF (N.FO.0)41.2 2 N1=N+1 PRINT C APRAY PRINT 101. N CALL PRNTC(N1+C+2) PRINT 102. 10 C COMPUTE F(1) nn 10 1=1+N1 F(I) = CMPLX(0, 0, 0)11=1-1 NJ=N1-11 DO 5 J=1.NJ JI = II + JF(1)=F(1)+C(J)\*CONJ(C(J1)) 10 CONTINUE COMPUTE A(1) M=2\*N

M1 = M + 1

	DO 20 I=1.N
	I 1 = N1 - I + 1
	A(1) = -CONJ(F(11))
	N]=N1+1
20	A(NI) = -F(I+1)
	A(N1) = IO + IO - F(1)
8894 maa a ay ama a a	AO = CRFAL(A(N1))
ſ	
<u> </u>	PRINT A ARRAY
C	
;	PRINT 103. MI
	CALL PRNTC(M1+A+2)
· C	
С	FIND ROOTS
· č	
	CALL POLYROOT (M+A+1+0F=05+R+ABRTN)
	$1F(ABRTN_FQ_0)30.40$
C	FORM AND FIND CONJUGATE INVERSES
······································	
,	DO 35 1-1-M
··	
יר	RR(J) = R(I)
	$\frac{RI(J)=I \cdot Z(ONJ(R(I)))}{IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII$
16	
!?	CRFK=CRFAL (R(K))
	CIMJ=CIMAG(RI(J))
¥	CIMK=CIMAG(R(K))
	IF (CREJ•FQ•0•0)32•3223
3223	IF (ABS((CREJ=CREK)/CREJ)+LE+EPS+OR+APS(CREJ=CREK)+LE+EPS)32+33
22	IF(CIMJ+F0+0+0)34+3425
3425	IF (ABS((CIMJ=CIMK)/CIMJ) • LE • EPS • OR • AHS(CIMJ=CIMK) • LE • EPS) 34 • 33
33	CONTINUE
[	PRINT 106+ J
	DO 500 I=1.M
	P=CRFAL(R(I))
	Q=CIMAG(P(I))
	CTMP=1./CONJ(R(I))
	X=CRFAL(CTMP)
	Y=CIMAG(CTMP)
500	PRINT 501 + P+Q+X+Y
501	FORMAT(1H0+2(E14+7+2X+F14+7+5X))
**************************************	CO TO 40
34	₽(K)=CMPLX(^•• <sup>0</sup> •)
	P(1)=CMPLX(0,0)
75	CONTINUE
r	
······	PRINT POOTS
C	
·	PRINT 104
	CALL PRNTC(N+RR+1)
·	DDINT 107
	CALL PRNTC (N+RI+1)
	NA CANANA AND A CANA
	ສ. <b>ວ</b>
*****	L=)

.

C COMPUTE COFFEICIENTS USING FIRST N ROOTS C CALL COFFE (N+PR+D) C PDINT N ADDAY 2 DD UT 105. N CALL PRNTC(N1.0.2) с С NORMALIZE COFFFICIENTS ٢. SIMEO. DO 36 1=1+N1 36 SUM=SUM+CNORM(D(1))\*\*2 D=SORT (AO/SUM) DO 37 1=1.N1 37 D(1)=D(1)\*0 PRINT NORMALIZED D ARRAY C PRINT 108. N CALL PRNTC (N1 . D. 2) Ċ COMPUTE ANGLES AND PHASE SHIETS USING FIRST N ROOTS CALL ANGLES 40 CONTINUE -----GO TO 1 41 CONTINUE STOP END . . . . . 

.....

E-4
```
TYPE COMPLEX (4) CMPLX.CONJ
  TYPE COMPLEX (4) C.F.A.R.D
  COMMON N.C(17).IO.F(17).A(33).R(32).D(17)
  REAL IO
  DIMENSION 1(40)
  DIMENSION P(2.17)
  READ COFFFICIENTS SYMBOLICALLY AND PRINT
  READ 1. M
  FORMAT((8110))
  M IS NUMBER OF WORDS
   1= (M.=0.0)7.10
10 READ 2. (1(J). J=1.M)
2 FORMAT (2004)
  PRINT 3
3 FORMAT(1H1+16HCOFFFICIENTS ARE)
  PRINT 4. (1(J). J=1.M)
4 FORMAT(1H0,32A4)
  DEFINE COFFETCIENTS
  READ 1. N
  N IS NUMBER OF CRYSTALS
  READ COFFFICIENTS
  N1=N+1
  RFAD 5. (P(1.J).P(2.J). J=1.N1)
  FORMAT((4F20.10))
  DO 6 J=1+N1
 RFAD 5. 10
  DETUDN
 7 N=0
  RETURN
```

SUBROUTINE READC

.....

.......

. ... ......

END

E-5

	1 101 2 102	SUBROUTINE PRNTC(N DIMENSION P(2,33) GO TO (1.2), M PRINT 101, (P(1.1)) FORMAT(1H0.2(E13.64 RETURN PRINT T02, (P(1.1)) FORMAT(1H0.4(E13.64 RETURN	P•M) P(2•I)• I 2X•E13•6• P(2•I)• I 2X•E13•6•	= 1 • N ) 5X ) ) = 1 • N ) 4X ) / )	
···· · -		ENU .	-		
el a BBC deservició					
_					
ಕರ ಬ್ರಾಪ್ ಕ್ರಮ್ಮತ್ತು ಕುಡಿಸುತ್ತಿದ್ದ ಕ್ರಿ		· · ·			
					· ·
	• • • • • •				
·	-			-	
;	-	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	•		
	-	• • •			
					<b></b>
			· -		
-	-				
					·
• • • • •				·· ·	
•••				-	

. -

.

ELINICTION CONJ(C) TYPE COMPLEX (4) CMPLX+CONJ TYPE COMPLEX (4) C CONJ=CMPLX(CREAL(C)+-CIMAG(C)) DETUDN END

•

1:----

**. .** . . . .

-----

- • •

• •

· ·

.

3 a.

-

•

		SUBROUTINE POLYROOT (M.	C+EPS+R+ABRT	N)
$C_{\cdot}$		PROGRAM FINDS ROOTS OF	POLYNOMIAL	WITH COMPLEX COFFFICIENTS C(1)
r		AND WITH DEGREE M LED	32	
ſ		M IS DEGREE OF POLYNOM	1 1 AL_	
C		C(1) IS LIST OF COFFET	CIENTS	
C		C MUST BE DECLARED COM	PLFX	
C		C(1) IS COFFFICIENT OF	HIGH-ORDER	TFRM
Ċ		FPS IS DESIRED RELATIV	E FRROR IN R	00TS
C		R IS LIST OF REAL AND	COMPLEX ROOT	S. MUST BE DECLARED COMPLEX
C		ABRTN IS ABNORMAL RETU	IRN FLAG. =1	FOR NO CONVERGENCE
		TYPE COMPLEX (4) ROOT.	R.C.F.GUESS.	CONJ
		INTEGER ARRTN		
		DIMENSION (33) . P(32)		
		J=1		
		NEM		
		N1 = N+1		
	5	CALL FINDROOT (N+C+FPS+	ROOT + ABRTN )	
		IF (APRTN.FO.0)10,100		
	10	TEST=CIMAG(ROOT)	-	·
		IF(TEST.FO.0.)20,50		
C	-	DEAL ROOT		· • · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	20	N=N-1		
		N11 = N+ 1		-
		P(J)=P00T		
		DO 30 1=2.NI		
	30	C(1)=C(1)+ROOT*C(1-1)	-	
		1F(N.FQ.0)100,40		
	۵Ĵ	TF(N.FQ.1)80.5		
C		COMPLEX ROOT		
	50	CALL FVAL (N.C.ROOT.F)		
		F1=CNORM(F)		
		R(J)=R00T		
		J=J+1		
		N=N-1		
_	_	N1 = N+1	<b>.</b> .	. <u>-</u>
		DO 51 1=2.Nt		
	r: 1	<pre>c(I)=c(I)+R00T*c(I-1)</pre>		
		GUESS=CONJ (ROOT)		
		CALL EVAL (N+C+GUESS+E)		
		F2=CNORM(F)		
		IF (F2.LF.F1)52.40		
	52	ROOT=GUESS		
		GO TO 20		
C		LAST LINFAR FACTOR		
	80	R(J) = -C(2)/C(1)		· ····································
	100	CONTINUE		
		PETURN		
		FND		
		~~ .		

- - - -

E-8

. .

SUBROUTINE FINDROOT(N+C+EPS+ROOT+ABRTN) С. S/R FINDS ROOT OF POLYNOMIAL USING TECHNIQUE BASED ON D-ALEMBERT-S LEMMA TYPE COMPLEX (4) GUESS POINT + F + ROOT + CMPLX + DELR + DELI + C INTEGER ARRTN DIMENSION POINT(4) FN(5) C(33) INTTIAL 17F APRTN=0 GUESS=CMPLX(.1..1) GUESS IS CENTER POINT OF SQUARE WITH VERTICES POINT(1) FVALUATE POLYNOMIAL AT GUESS CALL FVAL (N.C.GUESS, F) FN(1)=CNORM(F) DFLR=CMPLX(.5.0.) DELI=CMPLX(0...5) 11=0 12=0 II INCREMENTS WHEN CENTER POINT IS MOVED, STEP SIZE REMAINS CONSTANT 12 INCREMENTS WHEN STEP SIZE IS DECREASED. CENTER POINT REMAINS SAME C HAVE THERE BEEN FIVE ATTEMPTS WITH PRESENT STEP SIZE 10 IF(11.LT.5)20.30 NO. KEEP TRYING 20 11=11+1 IF(11.LT.50)50.131 C YES. HAS STEP SIZE EVER BEEN DECREASED-IF YES, KEEP ON TRYING <u>C</u>\_ 30 IF(12.GT.0)20.40 NO. INCREMENT STEP SIZE AND START AGAIN 11=1 40 DFLD=8.\*DFLD DELT=8.\*DELT COMPLITE POINTS 50 POINT(1)=GUESS+DELR POINT (2)=GUESS-DELP POINT(3)=GUESS+DEL1 POINT(4)=GUESS-DEL1 EVALUATE POLYNOMIAL AT POINT(1) DO 60 1=2.5 CALL FVAL (N.C. POINT (1-1).F) 60 FN(I)=CNORM(F) IF(12.GT.10)101.70 ARE VALUES OF POLYNOMIAL ALL SMALL 70 DO 80 1=1.5 TF(FN(1)+LF+10+)80+81 BO CONTINUE ÝËŚ GO TO 101

	Ċ		
	c	NO. ADE VALUES OF DOLVNOMIAL ALL CLOCE	
-	~	THE ALL CLUSH	-
	·		
-	- <u>- H</u>		
		NO 90 J=1.5	
		IF(ABS(FN(1)-FN(J)).LE.1.F-03)90.101	
	90	0 CONTINUE	·· ·
	100	0 CONTINUE	
	с <u>1</u>		
	` ~		
		1P30 HAS SIEP SIZE EVER BEEN DECREASED	
4	C	IF NOT INCREMENT STEP SIZE	
		IF(12.GT.0)101.40	
	r	OTHEDWISE, KEED ON GOING	
6	r	NO. IS GUESS A ROOT	
	r	····~ · · ·	
	101	1 IF (FN(1)) = F-1-F-10)102+103	
1	~ · · ·		-
,			
) <sup>-</sup>	105	2 ROOT=GUESS	
		DETUDN	
(	~		
(	'n	NO.IS ANY POINT A ROOT	
	103	3 00 110 1=2.5	
·			e=+
;	110		**
		GO TO 112	
. (	~	VES	
/••••••••	111	1 ROOT=POINT(1-1)	· ·
		RETURN	
:	<b>~</b>		
	~		
		NOT COMPARE CENTER POINT WITH VERTICES	
	112		
·		1F(FN(1)+LT+FN(1))115+123	
	115	5 CONTINUE	
C	~		
(		ROOT LIES WITHIN PRESENT SQUARE, DECREASE STEE	S17F
		DEL DEL D/2.	
****			
	-		
- r		IS STEP STZE TOO SMALL	
		A=CREAL (GUESS)	
		IF(A.EQ.0.)116+117	
	116	5 1F (CREAL (DELR) + LF + FPS) 118 + 121	
	117	7 IF (ABS (CREAL (DELR)/A) ALE AERS) 118-121	
	11A	A A=CIMAG(GUESS)	-
	1 1 1 1		
	119	F (CREAL (DELR) +LE+EPS) 102+121	
	120	) IF (ABS(CREAL(DELR)/A)+LE+EPS)102+121	
·····	•	NO. HAVE THERE BEEN TOO MANY ITERATIONS	
	121	IF(12.GT.50)131.122	
	· · · ·	NO	144
	122	2 10+1011	
			<b>-</b>
		GO TO 50	
Ċ	•		
Č	ā '	ROOT LIES OUTSIDE PRESENT SQUARE, FIND MINIMUM	POINT
ſ	•	FOR CENTER OF NEW SQUARE	
	123	TFST=FN(2)	
		J=1	
• · · ·		V == 1	
		E-10	

-

• -

. ... ... ..

	no 130 t=3.5
124	$\frac{1F(TFST \bullet LF \bullet FN(1))130 \bullet 124}{TFST = FN(1)}$
170	J=I-1 CONTINUE
·	$\frac{\text{CUESS}=\text{POINT}(J)}{\text{FN}(1)=\text{FN}(J+1)}$
r	GO TO LO YES, SET ARNORMAL RETURN
171	
132	PRINT 132 EORMAT(140,144NO, CONVERGENCE)
······	ROOT=GUESS
	PETUDN
	FND
i	······
2	
{	
5	
7	
ŝ- <u></u>	
î	
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Ŋ	
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	·····
· · · · · · ·	••
:	
·	
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	· · · ·
:	E-11

\_\_\_\_\_ - ---- - F-TT

			· -·-	É-15
--	--	--	-------	------

· · · · · · · · · ·

· · ·

-----

-----

------ ---- ··· ·· ··

- - -- -

----

• • • •

- --

N1=N+1 F=C(1)\*GUFSS+C(2) DO 10 I=3+N1 10 F=F\*GUFSS+C(1) RFTURN FND

SUBROUTINE EVAL (N.C.GUESS.F) TYPE COMPLEX(4) GUESS.F.C DIMENSION C(33) N1=N+1 E=C(1)\*GUESS+C(2)

 С С	SUBROUTINE COFFE(X X. Y ARE REAL AND M IS DEGREE OF POL	•Y•M•A1 •F IMAGINARY YNOMIAL	PARTS OF	THE ROOTS	
. <u></u> .	A1 + B1 ARE RESULTI	NG COFFEI	CIENTS, RE	AL AND IMAGINAR	Y PARTS.
	DIMENSION A1(25) +R M1=M+1	1(25) + 42	(25) • B2 (25)	•X(24)•Y(24)	
·	A1 (M1)=1. B1 (M1)=0.			· · ·	
[	A1(1)=X(1)*X(2)-Y( B1(1)=X(1)*Y(2)+X(2)	1)*Y(2) 2)*Y(1)			
·	$\begin{array}{l} A1(2) = -(X(1) + X(2)) \\ B1(2) = -(Y(1) + Y(2)) \end{array}$				
··5	IF (2-M)5.4.4 DO 3 I=3. M		-		
I	A2(1)=-X(1)*A1(1)+ B2(1)=-X(1)*B1(1)-	Y(I)*B1(1 Y(I)*A1(1	) }		
N	<u>L=I-1</u> DO 1 J=2+ L				
11	$\frac{A2(J)=A1(J-1)-X(1)}{B2(J)=B1(J-1)-Y(1)}$	* <u>A1(J)+Y(</u> *A1(J)-X(	1)*P1(J) 1)*P1(J)		
1:	$\frac{A2(1) = A1(1-1) - X(1)}{B2(1) = B1(1-1) - Y(1)}$	<b></b> -		··· -	
:	$\frac{100}{1} \frac{2}{1} \frac{1}{1} \frac{1}{1}$	-	-		
<sup>16</sup> 3 4	CONTINUE DO 6 K=1+M1		-	· · ·	-
n	A2(K)=A1(K) B2(K)=B1(K)				-
10	DO 7 K=1+M1 J=M1+1-K				
	A1 (K)=A2(J) B1 (K)=B2(J)				
21	RFTURN FND	-			
···	<b>.</b>				
P					
-*				-	
	<b>.</b>	· • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •			
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·					
:,		-			
::					
ř				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
;;	-	• -			
			E-13		

E-1.3

```
SUBROUTINE ANGLES
    COMMON N.C(17).10.F(17).A(33).R(32).D(17)
    TYPE COMPLEX (4) CMPLX.CONJ
    TYPE COMPLEX (4) C.F.A.R.D.CP
    TYPE COMPLEX (4) FI.SI.AA.BB.CC.CTMP.FB.FS.FF.FM
    PFAL 10
    REAL MU
    DIMENSION ITH(17) • FMIN(17) • SI(17) • FI(17) • TH(17) • CP(17)
    DIMENSION AA(17+2)+88(2+2)+CC(17+2)+8(17)
    P1=3.1415927
    PATOD=180./PI
100 FORMAT(1H0+13X+4HF(1)+31X+4HS(1))
101 FORMAT(1H0.2(F14.7.2X.F14.7.5X))
102 FORMAT(1H1+43X+20HTHETA(1)+ B(1)+ 1=1++13+12H THETAP+ BP)
103 FORMAT(1H0+45X+14+5H DEG +F7+3+5H MIN +5X+E14+7)
104 = 60RMAT(1H0, 3HMU=, F14, 7)
105 FORMAT(1H0.28HD(1) MULTIPLIED BY EXP(1*MU))
106 FORMAT(1H0+13X+4HC(1)+26X+15HCALCULATED_C(1))
    N1 = N1 + 1
    M1=N1
    CTMP=D(M1)/C(M1)
    THP=ATAN(CNORM(CTMP))
    TH(M1)=THP
    B(M1) = ATAN2PI(-CIMAG(C(1)) + CREAL(C(1)))
    COSR=COS(B(M))
    SINR=SIN(R(M1))
   FR=CMPLX(COSP.SINR)
    A=ATAN2PI(CIMAG(CTMP), CREAL(CTMP))
   MU=R(M1)-A
   FM=CMPLX(COS(MU),SIN(MU))
    PRINT 104. MIL
   DO 5 1=1.M1
 5 D(1)=D(1)*FM
    PRINT 105
    CALL PRNTC(M1+D+2)
    T1=THP*RATOD
    ITH(M1)=T1
    FMIN(M1) = ABS((T1 - 1TH(M1)) * 60)
    SINP=SIN(THP)
    COSP=COS(THP)
    DO 10 1=1+M1
    FI(I)=C(I)*SINP*FA-D(I)*COSP
 10 SI(1)=C(1)*COSP*FR+D(1)*SINP
    PRINT 100
 • ---
   DO 20 1=1+M1
    P=CRFAL(FI(1))
    Q=CIMAG(FI(I))
    X=CRFAL(ST(1))
    Y = C I M A G (S I (I))
20 PRINT 101. P.O.X.Y
21 MI=M1-1
    IF (M1.FO.0)70.22
 22 CTMP=FI(M1)/SI(M1+1)
    THP=ATAN(CNORM(CTMP))
    B(M1)=ATAN2PI(-CIMAG(CTMP)+-CRFAL(CTMP))
    IF (ABS(B(M1)-PI).LT.1.F-05)23+24
```

	àà	
	24	
••••••	24	
	74	
	<b>.</b>	1 TH (M1) # T1
		$FMIN(MI) = ABS((TI - ITH(MI)) * 60 \bullet)$
		IF (M1 • F0 • 1 ) 21 • 25
	25	TF=CNORM(FI(M1))
·	· •• ·	TS=CNORM(SI(M1+1))
		TMP=SQRT(TF*TF+TS*TS)
ç		$DO  3O  I = 1 \cdot M1$
		AA([•])=FI(])
D	30	AA(1,2) = SI(1+1)
		BR(1+1)=SI(M1+1)
P		PR(201)=-FI(M1)
		PR(1,2) = CMPL(0,0)
12		RB(2+2)=BB(1+2)
12		CALL MATMP(AA+M1+2+BB+2+1+CC)
		FS=CMPLX(CRFAL(S1(M1+1))/TS)-CIMAG(S1(M1+1))/TS)
3		$DO 40 I = 1 \cdot M1$
	40	FI(I)=FS*CC(I+1)/TMP
' <b>:</b>		CTMP=CONJ(BH(1+1))
		BB(1+1)=CONJ(-BB(2+1))
1;		BB(2.1)=CTMP
		FF=FB*CONJ(ES)
:6		CALL MATMP(AA+M1+2+BB+2+1+CC)
		DO 50 I=1.NI
17	50	S1(1)=FF*CC(1+1)/TMP
		PRINT 100
1:		DO 60 1=1.M1
		P=CRFAL(FI(I))
'}		0=CIMAG(F1(1))
_		X=CRFAL(SI(I))
		Y=CIMAG(SI(I))
		1F(1.EQ.1.AND.M1.EQ.2)51+60
	51	
	60	PRINT 101. P.Q.X.Y
	-	GO TO 21
	70	PRINT 102. N
• •		DO 80 1=1+N1
	80	PRINT 103. ITH(I). FMIN(1). B(1)
		P=PP
		IF (P.GT.0AND.TH(1).GT.0.)81.82
	81	10=-10
		GO TO 84
11	Ë2	IF (P+1, T+0++AND+TH(1)+LT+0+)83+84
	87	10 = -10
·1	84	CALL CINVERS (N. IO. TH. B.CP)
·		PRINT 106
3		DO 90 1=1.N1
		P=CRFAL(C(1))
	· ·-	Q = CIMAG(C(I))
		X=CRFAL(CP(1))
5		Y = CIMAG(CP(I))
	۵ñ	PRINT 101 . P.Q.X.Y
:	-90	a na financia da financia da financia da composición de la composición de la composición de la composición de La composición de la c

------

ų

.

• •• ••• E-16

· ....

-----. .. . . . --

\_\_\_\_ ----• • • . . . .......... ..... ----- -. \_ .. .

------ -. . . -----

-

- ---

~ ---- ----. . . . . . .

..... -

····· · . - ----------

... --<del>.</del>... . . .... ·· · · --\_ ------\* . .... -. \_.... - -----

RETURN FND

- -- - -

-

- --

----

-

.

- --

- -

- --

	SUBROUTINE MATMP (A+NRA+NCA+B+NRB+NCB+C)	
i	$\frac{TYPF}{COMPLEX} (4)  A \bullet B \bullet C \bullet CMPLX$ $DIMENSION  A (17 \bullet 2) \bullet B (2 \bullet 2) \bullet C (17 \bullet 2)$	
(	DO 2 K=1+NCB	
. Final a difference internation of the second s	$\frac{C(1 \bullet K) = CMPLX(0 \bullet \bullet 0 \bullet)}{DO(1 \cup J = 1 \bullet NCA}$	
; <u>1</u>	$C(1 \bullet K) = C(1 \bullet K) + A(1 \bullet J) * B(J \bullet K)$ CONTINUE	
f		
f <del></del>		
19		
17		
13		
}		
11		
16		
17		•
18		
17	· ····································	
2		
2		
••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	·····	
°		
·'		
í		
ïł	······································	
9 <u></u>		
• •		

-

. . . . . ....

		SUBROUTINE CINVERS(N+10+TH+B+C)
		PFAL 10
		TYPE COMPLEX (4) EM, AA, BB, C, D, EB, CMPLX
		DIMENSION FM(32,30), TH(17), B(17), AA(34,1), BB(34,1), C(17), D(17)
. 1	00	FORMAT(1H1.13HCHECK PROGRAM)
1	01	$\mathcal{E} \cap \mathcal{D} M A T (1 H 0 1 1 0 H D (K) A K P 0 1 A T 3 1$
1	ົ້ດອ້	
1	0.3	= COMAT(1H0.60Y.2/E14.7.2Y.E14.7.6Y.Y)
· ^ -		
C.		
	•	
-		SIN(=SIN((H(1)))
		COST=COS(TH(I))
1		FB@CMPLX(COS(B(I)))-SIN(B(I)))
		$PR(1 \bullet 1) = -SINT * IU$
1?		BB(2+1)=FB*COST*10
		PRINT 102
1		P=CREAL(BB(1,1))
		Q=CIMAG(BB(1,1))
1:	_	X=CREAL(BB(2+1))
		Y=CIMAG(BB(2+1))
1		PRINT 103. P.Q.X.Y
C		SECOND CRYSTAL
		I = I + 1
		IF(1.LF.N)501.70
		IM1 = 1-1
// <b></b>		SINT=SIN(TH(1))
		COST=COS(TH(I))
		FR=CMPLX(COS(R(I)),-SIN(R(I)))
		nn 10 J=1+4
		DO 10 K=1+2
	10	$FM(J \bullet K) = CMPLX(O \bullet \bullet O \bullet)$
2 MAR 20 1 1 10 MA 20 20		FM(1+1)=CMPLX(COST+0+)
		$FM(2 \cdot 2) = CMPLX(-SINT, 0)$
		FM(3.1)=FB*SINT
		FM(4.2)=FR*COST
•-		CALL MATMP1 (FM+4+2+BB+2+1+AA)
		nn 20 J=1+4
	20	$BB(J \bullet 1) = AA(J \bullet 1)$
		DRINT 102
** ** *		no 21 J=1.2
		J1=J+2
		P=CRFAL (BB(J+1))
		O=CIMAG(BB(J+1))
Dat		X=CREAL (BB(.11+1))
'eer	21	PRINT 103. P.O.X.Y
	•	
		1F(1+LF+N)30+70
C		
· · · · · ·	٦n	TOY METAT
		1
10 mm	NP	STNT=STN(TH(T))
		COST=COS(TH(I))
`		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

• • • • • • • •

.

```
FR=CMPLX(COS(R(1)))
            12=241
             13=12-2
            nn 40 J=1.12
            DO 40 K=1.13
         40 FM(J+K)=CMPLX(0...)
            nn 50 J=1+IM1
            = M(J \bullet J) = CMP(X(COST \bullet 0 \bullet))
            J1 = J+1
             J2=1M1+J
            FM(J1,J2)=CMPLX(-SINT,0)
             J1=1+J
             FM(J1.J)=FR4CTNT
             J1 = IP1 + J
             J2=1M1+J
         50 FM(J1.J2)=FR*COST
             CALL MATMP1 (FM.12.13. PB.13.1. AA)
             DO 60 K=1.12
         60 PR (K . 1) = AA (K . 1)
             PRINT 102
   nn 61 J=1+1
             J1 = J+1
             D=CDFAI (RR(J+1))
             n=rimag(RR(J+1))
     . . . . .
             X=CRFAL(RR(J1+1))
             Y=CIMAC(PP(J1+1))
14 au 20 au 22
         61 PRINT 103. P.O.X.Y
             1=1+1
                                                                             → -
1'-----
     ----
             TE(1+1, E+N) 37+70
             POLAPIZEP
 ----
         70 SINT=SIN(TH(N1))
             COST=COS(TH(N1))
 - --
             FB=CMPLX(COS(B(N1)),-SIN(B(N1)))
             N2=2*N+1
 DO 80 K=1+N
             NK=N2-K
         80 BR (NK+2+1)=BR (NK+1)
             \mathsf{BB}(\mathsf{N1},\mathsf{1})=\mathsf{CMPL}(\mathsf{O},\mathsf{O},\mathsf{O})
             \mathsf{PR}(N+2,1) = \mathsf{CMPL} \times (0, 0, 0)
             DO 90 K=1.N1
             NK=NJ+K
             C(K)=EB*SINT*BB(K+1)+EB*COST*BB(NK+1)
          90 D(K)=-COST*BB(K+1)+SINT*BB(NK+1)
             PRINT 101 . N
             CALL PRNTC(N1+D+2)
             RETURN
             FND
             ··· ·
 • . •
  .
  . .
      . . . .
```

.....

- •